UNITED STATES

SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION

Washington, D.C. 20549 FORM 10-K

☑ ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

For the fiscal year ended February 28, 2018

☐ TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934

Commission file number 001-14669



HELEN OF TROY LIMITED

(Exact name of the registrant as specified in its charter)

| Bermuda | 74-2692550 |
|--|--|
| (State or other jurisdiction of | (I.R.S. Employer |
| incorporation or organization) | Identification No.) |
| Clarendon House | |
| 2 Church Street | |
| Hamilton, Bermuda | |
| (Address of principal executive offices) | |
| 1 Helen of Troy Plaza | |
| El Paso, Texas | 79912 |
| (Registrant's United States Mailing Address) | (Zip Code) |
| | including area code: (915) 225-8000 unt to Section 12(b) of the Act: |
| Title of each class | Name of each exchange on which registered |
| Common Shares, \$0.10 par value per share | The NASDAQ Stock Market, LLC |
| Securities registered pursuant | to Section 12(g) of the Act: NONE |
| Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in | Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes ☑ No □ |
| Indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 1. | ion 13 or Section 15(d) of the Act. Yes □ No 🗷 |
| | filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 h, and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes \boxtimes No \square |
| | d on its corporate Web site, if any, every Interactive Data File required to be submitted and preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit |
| | ulation S-K (§229.405 of this chapter) is not contained herein, and will not be contained, to provided by reference in Part III of this Form 10-K or any amendment to this Form 10-K. |
| Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerate See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer," "smaller reporting of the control of the | ed filer, a non-accelerated filer, a smaller reporting company or emerging growth company. company" and "emerging growth company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act. |
| Large accelerated filer ✓ | Accelerated filer □ |
| Non-accelerated filer | Smaller reporting company |
| (Do not check if a smaller reporting company) | Emerging growth company \square |
| If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act. [] | not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial |
| Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule | 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes □ No ☑ |

As of April 21, 2018, there were 26,617,888 common shares, \$0.10 par value per share, outstanding.

common shares as reported by The NASDAQ Global Select Market on such date, was approximately \$2,451,672,081.

DOCUMENTS INCORPORATED BY REFERENCE

The aggregate market value of the voting and non-voting common shares held by non-affiliates of the registrant as of August 31, 2017, based upon the closing price of the

Portions of the Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders to be filed within one hundred and twenty days of the fiscal year ended February 28, 2018 (2018 Proxy Statement) are incorporated by reference into Part III of this report to the extent described herein.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

| _ | | |
|----------|-----------------|--|
| <u></u> | <u>Item 1.</u> | <u>Business</u> |
| | Item 1A. | Risk Factors |
| | Item 1B. | <u>Unresolved Staff Comments</u> |
| | <u>Item 2.</u> | <u>Properties</u> |
| | Item 3. | <u>Legal Proceedings</u> |
| _ | Item 4. | Mine Safety Disclosures |
| <u> </u> | Item 5. | Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters and |
| | | Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities |
| | Item 6. | Selected Financial Data |
| | <u>Item 7.</u> | Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results |
| | Item 7A. | of Operations Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk |
| | Item 8. | Financial Statements and Supplementary Data |
| | Item 9. | Changes in and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and |
| | | Financial Disclosure |
| | Item 9A. | Controls and Procedures |
| RT III | <u>Item 10.</u> | Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance |
| | Item 11. | Executive Compensation |
| | <u>Item 12.</u> | Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and |
| | | Related Shareholder Matters |
| | <u>Item 13.</u> | Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director |
| | <u>Item 14.</u> | Independence Principal Accounting Fees and Services |
| _ | <u>Item 14.</u> | Frincipal Accounting Fees and Services |
| RT IV | <u>Item 15.</u> | Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules |
| | | <u>Signatures</u> |
| | | <u>oignatures</u> |

EXPLANATORY NOTE

In this report and the accompanying consolidated financial statements and notes, unless otherwise indicated or the context suggests otherwise, references to "the Company", "our Company", "Helen of Troy", "we", "us", or "our" refer to Helen of Troy Limited and its subsidiaries. We refer to our common shares, par value \$0.10 per share, as "common stock." References to "EMEA" refer to the combined geographic markets of Europe, the Middle East and Africa. We use product and service names in this report for identification purposes only and they may be protected in the United States and other jurisdictions by trademarks, trade names, service marks, and other intellectual property rights of ours and other parties. The absence of a specific attribution in connection with any such mark does not constitute a waiver of any such right. All trademarks, trade names, service marks, and logos referenced herein belong to their respective owners. References to "fiscal" in connection with a numeric year number denotes our fiscal year ending on the last day of February, during the year number listed. References to "the FASB" refer to the Financial Accounting Standards Board. References to "GAAP" refer to U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. References to "ASU" refer to the codification of GAAP in the Accounting Standards Updates issued by the FASB. References to "ASC" refer to the codification of GAAP in the Accounting Standards Codification issued by the FASB.

PART I

Item 1. Business

Our Company

We incorporated in Texas in 1968 and were reorganized in Bermuda in 1994. We are a leading global consumer products company offering creative solutions for our customers through a diversified portfolio of well-recognized and widely-trusted brands. We have built leading market positions through new product innovation, product quality and competitive pricing.

Segment and Geographic Information

We currently have three business segments, which are included in our financial statements in continuing operations:

- Housewares: Provides a broad range of products to help with food preparation, cooking, cleaning, organization, beverage service, and other tasks to ease everyday living for families.
 Sales for the segment are primarily to retailers, with some direct-to-consumer product distribution.
- **Health & Home:** Provides healthcare and home environment products. Sales for the segment are primarily to retailers, with some direct-to-consumer product distribution.
- Beauty: Provides personal care and beauty appliance products including hair styling appliances, grooming tools, decorative haircare accessories, and liquid, solid and powder-based personal care products. This segment sells primarily to retailers and beauty supply wholesalers.

Prior to December 20, 2017, we operated a Nutritional Supplements segment. On December 20, 2017, we completed the divestiture of the Nutritional Supplements segment through the sale of Healthy Directions LLC and its subsidiaries to Direct Digital, LLC. Following the sale, we no longer consolidate our former Nutritional Supplements segment's operating results. The Nutritional Supplements segment's operating results are included in our financial statements and classified within discontinued operations. We have reallocated corporate overhead expenses to our continuing operating segments that were previously allocated to our former Nutritional Supplements segment. Unless otherwise noted, all amounts presented are from continuing operations. See Item 7, Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations (MD&A) and Note 4 of the accompanying consolidated financial statements for more information. Discontinued operations in this Annual Report on Form 10-K refers only to our discontinued Nutritional Supplements segment's operations.

For more segment and geographic information concerning our net sales revenue, long-lived assets and operating income, refer to Note 19 in the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

Our Strategic Initiatives

In fiscal 2015, we launched a transformational strategy designed to improve the performance of our business segments and strengthen our shared service capabilities. This strategy drives our decisions on where we will operate and how we will achieve our goals in markets around the world. The overall design of our business and organizational plan is intended to create sustainable and profitable growth and improve organizational capability. This strategy encompasses the following initiatives:

Invest in our core businesses

We have developed a portfolio of brands that are market leaders or have a path to grow their market position in attractive categories. This currently includes seven Leadership Brands: OXO, Honeywell,

Braun, PUR, Hydro Flask, Vicks, and Hot Tools. We continue to invest behind these Leadership Brands, which are our most productive brands, and which we believe have the best prospects for long-term profitable growth. Our Leadership Brands represented approximately 77% of net sales revenue from continuing operations during fiscal 2018. We believe that strategic investment in new products, go-to-market plans and marketing activities will continue to accelerate the organic growth of these brands.

Strategic, disciplined mergers and acquisitions

We are continually looking for new businesses and opportunities to expand in categories and geographies where we believe we have critical mass and can develop or sustain a competitive advantage. We will also increase our brand reach through new licensing opportunities when and where it makes sense. We frequently assess our portfolio of products and businesses to ensure each has a role to support our long-term plans.

Invest in consumer-centric innovation

We have a long history of developing or acquiring new technologies, new products that improve consumers' lives and new designs to differentiate our products from competitors. We continue to focus on innovation, both in our core categories and product adjacencies. We also focus on initiatives that create commercial value for existing products in order to increase their appeal and accelerate their organic growth. Consumer shopping preferences and behaviors have transformed the retail landscape from instore to omni-channel purchasing experiences. As the retail consumer evolves, we continue to invest in our digital capabilities and operational capacity to meet the omni-channel consumers' needs.

Upgrade our organization and people systems

We believe our employees are our most valuable assets. Attracting, retaining and developing talent is a key focus to ensure we can continue to deliver strong business results.

Best in class shared services

We have developed a quality, diversified base of suppliers in North America, China and Mexico. Through our shared service structure, we strive to improve our existing supplier base and infrastructure, develop new manufacturing partners, leverage scale, reduce lead times and apply best practices to ensure our products are innovative, on time, on cost and on quality. We also continue to invest in our distribution center capabilities and information technology systems while applying discipline and best practices to leverage scale and achieve supply chain excellence.

Attack waste

We continue to adopt more efficient and effective approaches to managing people, teams and operations to best respond to today's complex business environment. We believe that combining the best people and practices with the right technology provides a foundation for profitable growth. We promote a culture of attacking waste to improve the quality of our products and services, reduce costs and enhance our capacity to handle increased volume in order to exceed the expectations of our customers and consumers.

Asset efficiency and shareholder friendly policies

As we manage our businesses for long-term growth and success in the marketplace, we are also looking to manage our overall base of assets and capital structure to increase shareholder value. We focus on maximizing cash flow and return on investment, controlling our costs, increasing the efficiency of the capital we deploy, and optimizing working capital. We also seek to invest in accretive and strategic acquisitions and, where appropriate, provide a return of capital to shareholders.

Our Products

The following table summarizes the types of products we sell by business segment:

| Segment | Product Category | Primary Products | | | | |
|-----------------------|---|---|--|--|--|--|
| Housewares | Food Preparation and Storage | Food preparation tools and gadgets, food storage containers and storage and organization products | | | | |
| | Cleaning, Bath and Garden Household cleaning products, shower organization, ba accessories, and gardening products | | | | | |
| | Infant and Toddler Feeding and drinking products, child seating, cleaning nursery accessories | | | | | |
| | Hot and Cold Beverage and Food Containers | Insulated water bottles, jugs, thermoses, drinkware, travel mugs and food containers | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Health & Home | Healthcare | Thermometers, blood pressure monitors and humidifiers | | | | |
| Health & Home | Healthcare Water Filtration | Thermometers, blood pressure monitors and humidifiers Faucet mount water filtration systems and pitcher based water filtration systems | | | | |
| Health & Home | | Faucet mount water filtration systems and pitcher based water | | | | |
| Health & Home Beauty | Water Filtration | Faucet mount water filtration systems and pitcher based water filtration systems | | | | |

Our Trademarks

We sell certain of our products under trademarks licensed from third parties. We also market products under a number of trademarks that we own. We believe our principal trademarks, both owned and licensed, have high levels of brand name recognition among retailers and consumers throughout the world. Through our favorable partnerships with our licensors, we believe we have developed stable, enduring relationships that provide access to unique brands that complement our owned and internally developed trademarks.

The Beauty and Health & Home segments depend upon the continued use of trademarks licensed under various agreements for a substantial portion of their net sales revenue. New product introductions under licensed trademarks require approval from the respective licensors. The licensors must also approve the product packaging. Many of our license agreements require us to pay minimum royalties, meet minimum sales volumes and some require us to make minimum levels of advertising expenditures.

The following table lists some of our key trademarks by segment:

| Segment | Owned | Licensed |
|---------------|---|--------------------------|
| Housewares | OXO, Good Grips, Hydro Flask, Soft Works, OXO tot | |
| Health & Home | PUR | Honeywell , Braun, Vicks |
| Beauty | Hot Tools, Brut, Pert, Sure, Infusium, Pro Beauty Tools | Revlon, Bed Head |

Patents and Other Intellectual Property

We maintain utility and design patents in the United States and several foreign countries. We also protect certain details about our processes, products and strategies as trade secrets, keeping confidential the information that we believe provides us with a competitive advantage.

Sales and Marketing

We currently market our products in approximately 87 countries throughout the world. Sales within the United States comprised approximately 79% of total net sales revenue in both fiscal 2018 and 2017 and 78% in fiscal 2016. Our segments primarily sell their products through mass merchandisers, drugstore chains, warehouse clubs, home improvement stores, grocery stores, specialty stores, beauty supply retailers, e-commerce retailers, wholesalers, and various types of distributors, as well as directly to consumers. We collaborate extensively with our retail customers and, in many instances, produce specific versions of our product lines with exclusive designs and packaging for their stores, which are appropriately priced for their respective customer bases. We market products principally through the use of outside sales representatives and our own internal sales staff, supported by our internal marketing, category management, engineering, creative services, and customer and consumer service staff. These groups work closely together to develop pricing and distribution strategies, to design packaging and to help develop product line extensions and new products.

Research and Development

Our research and development activities focus on new, differentiated and innovative products designed to drive sustained organic growth. We continually invest to strengthen our product design and research and development capabilities, including extensive study to gain consumer insight. We incurred total research and development expenses of \$13.5, \$11.8 and \$11.6 million during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Manufacturing and Distribution

We contract with unaffiliated manufacturers, primarily in China and Mexico, to manufacture a significant portion of our finished goods for the Beauty appliances and accessories, Housewares, Healthcare, Water Filtration, and Home Environment product categories. The North American region of the grooming, skin and hair care category of the Beauty segment source most of their products from U.S. manufacturers. For fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, finished goods manufactured by vendors in the Far East comprised approximately 74%, 71% and 70%, respectively, of total finished goods purchased.

In total, we occupy approximately 3,552,728 square feet of owned and leased distribution space in various locations to support our operations. These facilities include a 1,200,000 square foot distribution center in Southaven, Mississippi, and a 1,300,000 square foot distribution center in Olive Branch, Mississippi, used to support a significant portion of our domestic distribution.

Customers

Sales to Walmart, Inc. (including its worldwide affiliates) accounted for approximately 15%, 16% and 18% of our consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Sales to Amazon.com Inc. accounted for approximately 13% of our consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018. No other customers accounted for 10% or more of consolidated net sales revenue during those fiscal years. Sales to our top five customers accounted for approximately 45% of our consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016.

Order Backlog

When placing orders, our individual consumer, retail and wholesale customers usually request that we ship the related products within a short time frame. As such, there usually is no significant backlog of orders in any of our distribution channels.

Seasonality

SEASONALITY AS A PERCENTAGE OF ANNUAL NET SALES REVENUE

| | | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | |
|----------------------|--------|--|--------|--|--|--|
| Fiscal Quarter Ended | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | | | |
| May | 22.0 % | 22.2 % | 22.0 % | | | |
| August | 23.3 % | 23.8 % | 23.8 % | | | |
| November | 28.4 % | 29.3 % | 29.3 % | | | |
| February | 26.2 % | 24.7 % | 25.0 % | | | |

Our sales are seasonal due to different calendar events, holidays and seasonal weather patterns. Historically, the third fiscal quarter produces the highest net sales revenue during the fiscal year.

Competitive Conditions

We sell our products in markets that are very competitive and mature. Our products compete against similar products of many large and small companies, including well-known global competitors. In many of the markets and industry segments in which we sell our products we compete against other branded products as well as retailers' private-label brands. We believe that we have certain key competitive advantages, such as well recognized brands, engineering expertise and innovation, sourcing and supply chain know-how, and productive co-development relationships with our Far East manufacturers. We support our products with advertising, promotions and other marketing activities, as well as an extensive sales force in order to build awareness and to encourage new consumers to try our brands and products. We are well positioned in the industry segments and markets in which we operate, often holding a leadership or significant market share position. We believe these advantages allow us to bring our retailers a differentiated value proposition.

The following table summarizes our primary competitors by business segment:

| Segment | Competitor |
|---------------|--|
| Housewares | Lifetime Brands, Inc. (KitchenAid), Newell Brands Inc., Simple Human LLC, Yeti Holdings, Inc. (Yeti), Can't Live Without It, Inc. (S'well) |
| Health & Home | Exergen Corporation, Omron Healthcare, Inc., Crane Engineering, Newell Brands, Inc., Lasko Products, LLC., The Clorox Company (Brita), Zero Technologies, LLC. |
| Beauty | Conair, Spectrum Brands Holdings Inc. (Remington), Newell Brands, Inc., The Procter & Gamble Company, Unilever N.V., Colgate-Palmolive Company |

Governmental, Regulatory and Environmental Matters

Our operations are subject to national, state, local, and provincial jurisdictions' environmental, health and safety laws and regulations. Many of the products we sell are subject to a number of product safety laws and regulations in various jurisdictions. These laws and regulations specify the maximum allowable levels of certain materials that may be contained in our products, provide statutory prohibitions against misbranded and adulterated products, establish ingredients and manufacturing procedures for certain products, specify product safety testing requirements, and set product identification and labeling requirements.

Additionally, an emerging trend with both governments and our retail customers is to prescribe public and private social accountability reporting requirements regarding our worldwide business activities. In our product space, some requirements have already been mandated and we believe others may become required. Examples of current requirements include conflict minerals content reporting and reporting of foreign fair labor practices in connection with our supply chain vendors, in addition to evaluating the risks of human trafficking and slavery.

Table of Contents

We believe that we are in material compliance with these laws, regulations and other reporting requirements. Further, the cost of maintaining compliance has not had a material adverse effect on our business, consolidated results of operations and consolidated financial condition, nor do we expect it to do so in the foreseeable future. Due to the nature of our operations and the frequently changing nature of compliance and social reporting standards and technology, we cannot predict with any certainty that future material capital or operating expenditures will not be required in order to comply with applicable laws, regulations and other reporting mandates.

Employees

As of February 28, 2018, we employed approximately 1,489 full-time employees worldwide. We also use temporary, part-time and seasonal employees as needed. None of our U.S. employees are covered by a collective bargaining agreement. Certain of our employees in Europe are covered by collective arrangements in accordance with local practice. We have never experienced a work stoppage, and we believe that we have satisfactory working relations with our employees.

Available Information

We maintain our main Internet site at the following address: http://www.hotus.com. The information contained on this website is not included as a part of, or incorporated by reference into, this report. We make available on or through our main website's Investor Relations page under the heading "SEC Filings" certain reports and amendments to those reports that we file with, or furnish to, the SEC in accordance with the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended (the "Exchange Act"). These include our annual reports on Form 10-K, our quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, our current reports on Form 8-K, our proxy statements on Schedule 14A, amendments to these reports, and the reports required under Section 16 of the Exchange Act of transactions in our common stock by directors and officers. We make this information available on our website free of charge as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file the information with, or furnish it to, the SEC. Also, on the Investor Relations page, under the heading "Corporate Governance," are our Code of Ethics, Corporate Governance Guidelines and the Charters of the Committees of the Board of Directors.

Item 1A. Risk Factors

Carefully consider the risks described below and all of the other information included in our Annual Report on Form 10-K when deciding whether to invest in our securities or otherwise evaluating our business. If any of the following risks or other events or circumstances described elsewhere in this report materialize, our business, operating results or financial condition may suffer. In this case, the trading price of our common stock and the value of your investment might significantly decline. The risks listed below are not the only risks that we face. Additional risks unknown to us or that we currently believe are insignificant may also affect our business.

Our ability to deliver products to our customers in a timely manner and to satisfy our customers' fulfillment standards are subject to several factors, some of which are beyond our control.

Retailers place great emphasis on timely delivery of our products for specific selling seasons, especially during our third fiscal quarter, and on the fulfillment of consumer demand throughout the year. We cannot control all of the various factors that might affect product delivery to retailers. Vendor production delays, difficulties encountered in shipping from overseas, customs clearance delays, and operational issues with any of the third-party logistics providers we use in certain countries are on-going risks of our business. We also rely upon third-party carriers for our product shipments from our distribution centers to customers. In certain circumstances, we rely on the shipping arrangements our suppliers have made in the case of products shipped directly to retailers from the suppliers. Accordingly, we are subject to risks, including labor disputes, inclement weather, natural disasters, possible acts of terrorism, availability of shipping containers, and increased security restrictions associated with the carriers' ability to provide delivery services to meet our shipping needs. Failure to deliver products to our retailers in a timely and effective manner, often under special vendor requirements to use specific carriers and delivery schedules, could damage our reputation and brands and result in loss of customers or reduced orders.

Large customers may take actions that adversely affect our gross profit and operating results.

With the continuing trend towards retail trade consolidation, we are increasingly dependent upon key customers whose bargaining strength is substantial and growing. We may be negatively affected by changes in the policies of our customers, such as on-hand inventory reductions, limitations on access to shelf space, use of private label brands, price and term demands, and other conditions, which could negatively impact our business, operating results and financial condition.

In addition, the growth in e-commerce sales, both by large traditional retailers and pure-play online retailers, has increased the size and influence of these types of customers. Certain of these customers source and sell products under their own private label brands that compete with our products. As certain large customers and online retailers grow even larger and become more sophisticated, they may continue to demand lower pricing, special packaging, shorter lead times for the delivery of products, smaller more frequent shipments, or impose other requirements on product suppliers. These business demands may relate to inventory practices, logistics or other aspects of the customer-supplier relationship. If we do not effectively respond to these demands, these customers could decrease their purchases from us. A reduction in the demand for our products by these customers and the costs of complying with their business demands could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

We are subject to risks related to our dependence on the strength of retail economies and may be vulnerable in the event of a prolonged economic downturn.

Our business depends on the strength of the retail economies in various parts of the world, primarily in North America and to a lesser extent Europe, Middle East and Africa ("EMEA"), Asia and Latin America. These retail economies are affected for the most part by factors such as consumer demand and the condition of the retail industry, which, in turn, are affected by general economic conditions and specific events such as natural disasters, terrorist attacks and political unrest. Consumer spending in any geographic region is generally affected by a number of factors, including local economic conditions, government actions, inflation, interest rates, energy costs, unemployment rates, gasoline prices, and consumer confidence, all of which are beyond our control. Consumer purchases of discretionary items tend to decline during recessionary periods, when disposable income is lower, and may impact sales of our products. Any sustained economic downturn in the United States or any of the other countries in which we conduct significant business, may cause significant readjustments in both the volume and mix of our product sales, which could materially and adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our operating results are dependent on sales to several large customers and the loss of, or substantial decline in, sales to a top customer could have a material adverse effect on our revenues and profitability.

A few customers account for a substantial percentage of our net sales revenue. Our financial condition and operating results could suffer if we lost all or a portion of the sales to any one of these customers. In particular, sales to our two largest customers accounted for approximately 15% and 13%, respectively, of our consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018. While only two customers accounted for 10% or more of our consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018, sales to our top five customers accounted for approximately 45% of fiscal 2018 consolidated net sales revenue. We expect that a small group of customers will continue to account for a significant portion of our net sales revenue. Although we have long-standing relationships with our major customers, we generally do not have written agreements that require these customers to buy from us or to purchase a minimum amount of our products. A substantial decrease in sales to any of our major customers could have a material adverse effect on our financial condition and operating results. We regularly monitor and evaluate the credit status of our customers and attempt to adjust sales terms as appropriate. Despite these efforts, a deterioration in the credit worthiness or bankruptcy filing of a key customer could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Expectations regarding recent acquisitions, and any future acquisitions or divestitures, including our ability to realize related synergies, along with our ability to effectively integrate acquired businesses or disaggregate divested businesses, may adversely affect the price of our common stock.

We continue to look for opportunities to make strategic business and/or brand acquisitions. Additionally, we frequently evaluate our portfolio of business products and may consider divestitures or exits of businesses that we no longer believe to be an appropriate strategic fit, such as our divestiture of Healthy Directions in fiscal 2018. Our financial results could be impacted in the event that changes in the cash flows or other market-based assumptions or conditions cause the value of acquired assets to fall below book value, or we are not able to deliver the expected benefits or synergies associated with acquisition transactions, which could also have an impact on associated goodwill and intangible assets. Any acquisition or divestiture, if not favorably received by consumers, shareholders, analysts, and others in the investment community, could have a material adverse effect on the price of our common stock.

In addition, any acquisition involves numerous risks, including:

- difficulties in the assimilation of the operations, technologies, products, and personnel associated with the acquisitions;
- challenges in integrating distribution channels;
- diversion of management's attention from other business concerns;
- difficulties in transitioning and preserving customer, contractor, supplier, and other important thirdparty relationships;
- challenges realizing anticipated cost savings, synergies and other benefits related to an acquisition:
- risks associated with subsequent losses or operating asset write-offs, contingent liabilities and impairment of related acquired intangible assets;
- · risks of entering markets in which we have no or limited experience; and
- potential loss of key employees associated with the acquisitions.

If our goodwill, indefinite-lived intangible assets or other long-term assets become impaired, we will be required to record impairment charges, which may be significant.

A significant portion of our long-term assets continues to consist of goodwill and other indefinite-lived intangible assets recorded as a result of past acquisitions. We do not amortize goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets, but rather review them for impairment on an annual basis or more frequently whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that their carrying value may not be recoverable. If such circumstances or conditions exist, further steps are required in order to determine whether the carrying value of each of the individual assets exceeds its fair market value. If our analysis indicates that an individual asset's carrying value does exceed its fair market value, the next step is to record a loss equal to the excess of the individual asset's carrying value over its fair value. The analysis required by GAAP entails significant amounts of judgment and subjectivity.

We complete our analysis of the carrying value of our goodwill and other intangible assets during the fourth guarter of our fiscal year, or more frequently, whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate their carrying value may not be recoverable. Events and changes in circumstances that may indicate there is impairment and which may indicate interim impairment testing is necessary include, but are not limited to: strategic decisions to exit a business or dispose of an asset made in response to changes in economic, political and competitive conditions; the impact of the economic environment on our customer base and on broad market conditions that drive valuation considerations by market participants; our internal expectations with regard to future revenue growth and the assumptions we make when performing our impairment reviews; a significant decrease in the market price of our assets; a significant adverse change in the extent or manner in which our assets are used; a significant adverse change in legal factors or the business climate that could affect our assets; an accumulation of costs significantly in excess of the amount originally expected for the acquisition of an asset; and significant changes in the cash flows associated with an asset. We analyze these assets at the individual asset, reporting unit and company levels. As a result of such circumstances, we may be required to record a significant charge to net income in our financial statements during the period in which any impairment of our goodwill, indefinite-lived intangible assets or other long-term assets is determined. Any such impairment charges could have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

We rely on our Chief Executive Officer and a limited number of other key senior officers to operate our business. The loss of any of these individuals could have a material adverse effect on our business.

The loss of our Chief Executive Officer or any of our key senior officers could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition, particularly if we are unable to hire and

integrate suitable replacements on a timely basis. Further, as we continue to grow our business, we will continue to adjust our senior management team. If we are unable to attract or retain the right individuals for the team, it could hinder our ability to grow our business and could disrupt our operations or otherwise have a material adverse effect on our business.

Our operating results may be adversely affected by foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations.

Our functional currency is the U.S. Dollar. Changes in the relation of other foreign currencies to the U.S. Dollar will affect our sales and profitability and can result in exchange losses because we have operations and assets located outside the United States. We transact a portion of our international business in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar ("foreign currencies"). Such transactions include sales, certain inventory purchases and operating expenses. As a result, portions of our cash, trade accounts receivable and trade accounts payable are denominated in foreign currencies. Accordingly, foreign operations will continue to expose us to foreign currency fluctuations, both for purposes of actual conversion and financial reporting purposes. Additionally, we purchase a substantial amount of our products from Chinese manufacturers in U.S Dollars. The Chinese Renminbi has fluctuated against the U.S. Dollar in recent years. In fiscal 2018 the Chinese Renminbi strengthened against the U.S. dollar by approximately 8.0%. Chinese Renminbi currency fluctuations add volatility to our product costs over time.

Where operating conditions permit, we seek to reduce foreign currency risk by purchasing most of our inventory with U.S. Dollars and by converting cash balances denominated in foreign currencies to U.S. Dollars. We have also historically hedged against certain foreign currency exchange rate-risk by using a series of forward contracts to protect against the foreign currency exchange risk inherent in our forecasted transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar. We enter into these types of agreements where we believe we have meaningful exposure to foreign currency exchange risk and the contract pricing appears reasonable. It is not practical for us to hedge all our exposures, nor are we able to accurately project the possible effect of all foreign currency fluctuations on translated amounts or future net income due to our constantly changing exposure to various currencies, the fact that each foreign currency reacts differently to the U.S. Dollar and the significant number of currencies involved.

The impact of future foreign currency exchange rate fluctuations on our results of operations cannot be accurately predicted. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that foreign currency exchange rates:

- will be stable in the future;
- can be mitigated with currency hedging or other risk management strategies; or
- will not have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our business is subject to weather conditions, the duration and severity of the cold and flu season and other related factors, which can cause our operating results to vary from quarter to quarter and year to year.

Sales in our Health & Home segment are influenced by weather conditions. Sales volumes for thermometry, humidifiers and heating appliances are higher during, and subject to, the severity of the cold weather months, while sales of fans and insect control devices are higher during, and subject to, weather conditions in spring and summer months. Weather conditions can also more broadly impact sales across the organization. For instance, natural disasters (such as wildfires, hurricanes and ice storms) or unusually severe winter weather may result in temporary unanticipated fluctuations in retail traffic and consumer demand, may impact our ability to staff our distribution facilities or could otherwise impede timely transport and delivery of products from our distribution facilities. Sales in our Health & Home segment are also impacted by cough, cold and flu seasonal trends, including the duration and

severity of the cold and flu season. These factors could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

We are dependent on third-party manufacturers, most of which are located in the Far East, and any inability to obtain products from such manufacturers could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

All of our products are manufactured by unaffiliated companies, most of which are in the Far East, principally in China. For fiscal 2018, finished goods manufactured in the Far East comprised of approximately 74% of total finished goods purchased. This concentration exposes us to risks associated with doing business globally, including: changing international political relations; labor availability and cost; changes in laws, including tax laws, regulations and treaties; changes in labor laws, regulations and policies; changes in customs duties, additional tariffs and other trade barriers; changes in shipping costs; currency exchange fluctuations; local political unrest; an extended and complex transportation cycle; the impact of changing economic conditions; and the availability and cost of raw materials and merchandise. The political, legal and cultural environment in the Far East is rapidly evolving, and any change that impairs our ability to obtain products from manufacturers in that region, or to obtain products at marketable rates, could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

With most of our manufacturers located in the Far East, our production lead times are relatively long. Therefore, we must commit to production in advance of customer orders. If we fail to forecast customer or consumer demand accurately, we may encounter difficulties in filling customer orders on a timely basis or in liquidating excess inventories. We may also find that customers are canceling orders or returning products. Any of these results could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Increased costs of raw materials and energy may adversely affect our operating results and cash flow

Significant increases in the costs and availability of raw materials and energy may negatively affect our operating results. Our suppliers purchase significant amounts of metals and plastics to manufacture our products. In addition, they also purchase significant amounts of electricity to supply the energy required in their production processes. Middle East tensions and related political instabilities may drive up fuel prices resulting in higher transportation prices and product costs. The cost of these raw materials and energy, in the aggregate, represents a significant portion of our cost of goods sold and certain operating expenses, which we may not be able to pass on to our customers. Our operating results could be adversely affected by future increases in these costs.

Disruptions in U.S., Eurozone and other international credit markets may adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

Disruptions in national and international credit markets could result in limitations on credit availability, tighter lending standards, higher interest rates on consumer and business loans, and higher fees associated with obtaining and maintaining credit availability. Disruptions may also materially limit consumer credit availability and restrict credit availability to us and our customer base. In addition, in the event of disruptions in the financial markets, current or future lenders may become unwilling or unable to continue to advance funds under any agreements in place, increase their commitments under existing credit arrangements or enter into new financing arrangements. The failure of our lenders to provide sufficient financing may constrain our ability to operate or grow the business and to make complementary strategic business and/or brand acquisitions. This could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Certain of our U.S. distribution facilities are geographically concentrated and operate during peak shipping periods at or near capacity. These factors increase our risk that disruptions could occur and significantly affect our ability to deliver products to our customers in a timely manner. Such disruptions could have a material adverse effect on our business.

Most of our U.S. distribution, receiving and storage functions are consolidated into two distribution facilities in northern Mississippi. Approximately 63% of our consolidated gross sales volume shipped from facilities in this region in fiscal 2018. For this reason, any disruption in our distribution process in either of these facilities, even for a few days, could adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

Additionally, our U.S. distribution operations may incur capacity constraints during peak shipping periods as we continue to grow our sales revenue through a combination of organic growth and acquisitions. These and other factors described above could cause delays in the delivery of our products and increases in shipping and storage costs that could have a material and adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our projections of product demand, sales and net income are highly subjective in nature and our future sales and net income could vary in a material amount from our projections.

From time to time, we may provide financial projections to our shareholders, lenders, investment community, and other stakeholders of our future sales and net income. Since we do not require long-term purchase commitments from our major customers and the customer order and ship process is very short, it is difficult for us to accurately predict the demand for many of our products, or the amount and timing of our future sales, related net income and cash flows. Our projections are based on management's best estimate of sales using historical sales data and other relevant information available at the time. These projections are highly subjective since sales to our customers can fluctuate substantially based on the demand of their retail customers and related ordering patterns, as well as other risks described in this report. Additionally, changes in retailer inventory management strategies could make our inventory management more difficult. Due to these factors, our future sales and net income could vary materially from our projections.

We rely on licensed trademarks from third parties and license certain trademarks to third parties in exchange for royalty income, the loss of which could have a material adverse effect on our revenues and profitability.

A substantial portion of our sales revenue comes from selling products under licensed trademarks, particularly in the Beauty and Health & Home segments. As a result, we are dependent upon the continued use of these trademarks. Additionally, we license certain owned trademarks to third parties in exchange for royalty income. It is possible that certain actions taken by us, our licensors, licensees, or other third parties might diminish greatly the value of any of our licensed trademarks. Some of our licensors and licensees also have the ability to terminate their license agreements with us at their option subject to each parties' right to continue the license for a limited period of time following notice of termination. If we or our licensees were unable to sell products under these licensed trademarks, or one or more of our license agreements were terminated or the value of the trademarks were diminished, the effect on our business, operating results and financial condition could be both negative and material.

To compete successfully, we must develop and introduce a continuing stream of innovative new products to meet changing consumer preferences.

Our long-term success in the competitive retail environment depends on our ability to develop and commercialize a continuing stream of innovative new products that meet changing consumer preferences and take advantage of opportunities sooner than our competition. We face the risk that our competitors will introduce innovative new products that compete with our products. There are numerous uncertainties inherent in successfully developing and commercializing new products on a continuing basis and new product launches may not deliver expected growth in sales or operating income. If we are unable to develop and introduce a continuing stream of competitive new products, it may have an adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our operating results may be adversely affected by trade barriers, exchange controls, expropriations, and other risks associated with domestic and foreign operations.

The economies of foreign countries important to our operations, including countries in Asia, EMEA and Latin America, could suffer slower economic growth or economic, social and/or political instability or hyperinflation in the future. Our international operations in countries in Asia, EMEA and Latin America, including manufacturing and sourcing operations (and the international operations of our customers), are subject to inherent risks which could adversely affect us. Additionally, there may be uncertainty resulting from recent political changes in the U.S. and abroad, the Brexit referendum in the U.K., ongoing terrorist activity, and other global events. These factors are outside of our control, but may nonetheless cause us to adjust our strategy in order to compete effectively in global markets.

The domestic and foreign risks of these changes include, among other things:

- protectionist policies restricting or impairing the manufacturing, sales or import and export of our products;
- new restrictions on access to markets;
- lack of required infrastructure;
- inflation (including hyperinflation) or recession;
- changes in, and the burdens and costs of compliance with, a variety of U.S. and foreign laws and regulations, including tax laws, accounting standards, environmental laws, and occupational health and safety laws;
- social, political or economic instability;
- acts of war and terrorism:
- natural disasters or other crises;
- reduced protection of intellectual property rights in some countries;
- increases in duties and taxation;
- restrictions on transfer of funds or exchange of currencies;
- currency devaluations;
- expropriation of assets; and
- other adverse changes in policies, including monetary, tax or lending policies, encouraging foreign investment or foreign trade by our host countries.

Should any of these events occur, our ability to sell or export our products or repatriate profits could be impaired, we could experience a loss of sales and profitability from our domestic or international operations, and/or we could experience a substantial impairment or loss of assets, any of which could materially and adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our liquidity may be materially adversely affected by constraints in the capital markets.

We need sufficient sources of liquidity to fund our working capital requirements, service our outstanding indebtedness and finance business opportunities. Without sufficient liquidity, we could be forced to curtail our operations, or we may not be able to pursue business opportunities. The principal sources of our liquidity are funds generated from operating activities, available cash, credit facilities, and other debt arrangements. If our sources of liquidity do not satisfy our requirements, we may need to seek additional financing. The future availability of financing will depend on a variety of factors, such as economic and market conditions, the regulatory environment for banks and other financial institutions, the availability of credit and our reputation with potential lenders. These factors could materially adversely affect our costs of borrowing and our ability to pursue business opportunities, and threaten our ability to meet our obligations as they become due.

In addition, covenants in our debt agreements could restrict or delay our ability to respond to business opportunities, or in the event of a failure to comply with such covenants, could result in an event of default, which if not cured or waived, could have a material adverse effect on us.

We rely on central Global Enterprise Resource Planning ("ERP") systems and other peripheral information systems. Obsolescence or interruptions in the operation of our computerized systems or other information technologies could have a material adverse effect on our operations and profitability.

Our operations are largely dependent on our ERP system. We continuously make adjustments to improve the effectiveness of the ERP and other peripheral information systems, including the installation of significant new subsystems. Any failures or disruptions in the ERP and other information systems or any complications resulting from ongoing adjustments to our systems could cause interruption or loss of data in our information or logistical systems that could materially impact our ability to procure products from our factories and suppliers, transport them to our distribution centers, and store and deliver them to our customers on time and in the correct amounts. In addition, natural disasters or other extraordinary events may disrupt our information systems and other infrastructure, and our data recovery processes may not be sufficient to protect against loss.

Failure to maintain the integrity of and protect internal or customer data could have a material advere effect on our operations and profitability and may result in faulty business decisions, operational inefficiencies, damage to our reputation and/or subject us to costs, fines, or lawsuits.

Information systems require constant updates to their security policies and hardware systems to reduce the risk of unauthorized access, malicious destruction of data or information theft. We rely on commercially available systems, software, tools, and monitoring to provide security for processing, transmission and storage of confidential information and data. While we have security measures in place, our systems and networks may be subject to ongoing threats and, therefore, our security measures may be breached as a result of employee error, failure to implement appropriate processes and procedures, advances in computer and software capabilities and encryption technology, new tools and discoveries, malfeasance, third-party action, including cyber-attacks or other international misconduct by computer hackers or otherwise. This could result in one or more third-parties obtaining unauthorized access to our client data or our internal data, including personally identifiable information, intellectual property and other confidential business information. Third-parties may also attempt to fraudulently induce employees into disclosing sensitive information such as user names, passwords or other information in order to gain access to client data or our internal data, including intellectual property and other confidential business information.

Because techniques used to obtain unauthorized access or sabotage systems change frequently and generally are not identified until they are launched against a target, we may be unable to anticipate these techniques or to implement adequate preventative or mitigation measures. Though it is difficult to determine what harm may directly result from any specific interruption or breach, any failure to maintain performance, reliability, security and availability of our network infrastructure or otherwise to maintain the confidentiality, security, and integrity of data that we store or otherwise maintain on behalf of third-parties may harm our reputation and our relationships or harm our ability to retain existing clients and attract new clients. Any of these could harm our business, financial condition and results of operations.

If such unauthorized disclosure or access does occur, we may be required to notify our clients or those persons whose information was improperly used, disclosed or accessed. We may also be subject to claims of breach of contract for such use or disclosure, investigation and penalties by regulatory authorities and potential claims by persons whose information was improperly used or disclosed. The unauthorized use or disclosure of information may result in the termination of one or more of our commercial relationships or a reduction in confidence and usage of our solutions. We could also become the subject of regulatory action or litigation from our consumers, customers, employees, suppliers, service providers, and shareholders, which could damage our reputation among our current and potential clients, require significant expenditures of capital and other resources, and cause us to lose business and revenue. Additionally, an unauthorized disclosure or use of information could cause interruptions in our operations and might require us to spend significant management time and other resources investigating the event and dealing with local and federal law enforcement. Regardless of the merits and ultimate outcome of these matters, the time and expense that may be required to devote to their resolution could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Even if we do not suffer a data security breach, the increase in the number and the scope of data security incidents has increased regulatory and industry focus on security requirements and heightened data security industry practices. New regulation, evolving industry standards, and the interpretation of both, may cause us to incur additional expense in complying with any new data security requirements. Further, any actual or perceived threats to the security of computers and computer networks, especially mobile devices and mobile networks, could lead existing and potential users to refrain from responding to online advertising.

Recent legal developments in Europe could result in changes to our business practices, penalties, increased cost of operations, or otherwise harm our business.

Recent legal developments in Europe have created compliance uncertainty regarding the collection, retention and transfer of personal data. More specifically, the General Data Protection Regulation (GDPR), coming into application in the European Union (EU) on May 25, 2018, will apply to all of our activities related to EU individuals. The GDPR will create a range of new compliance obligations, which could result in increased cost of operations, cause us to change our business practices, and will significantly increase financial penalties for noncompliance.

Our business involves the potential for product recalls, product liability and other claims against us, which could materially and adversely affect our business, operating results and financial condition.

We are, from time to time, involved in various claims, litigation matters and regulatory proceedings that arise in the ordinary course of our business and that could have a material adverse effect on us. These matters may include personal injury and other tort claims, deceptive trade practices disputes, intellectual property disputes, product recalls, contract disputes, warranty disputes, employment and tax matters and other proceedings and litigation, including class actions. It is not possible to predict the outcome of pending or future litigation. As with any litigation, it is possible that some of the actions could be decided unfavorably, resulting in significant liability and, regardless of the ultimate outcome, can be costly to defend. Our results and our business could also be negatively impacted if one of our brands suffers substantial damage to its reputation due to a significant product recall or other product-related litigation and if we are unable to effectively manage real or perceived concerns about the safety, quality, or efficacy of our products.

We also face exposure to product liability and other claims in the event that one of our products is alleged to have resulted in property damage, bodily injury or other adverse effects. Although we maintain liability insurance in amounts that we believe are reasonable, that insurance is, in most cases, subject to large self-insured retentions for which we are responsible. We cannot provide assurance that we will be able to maintain such insurance on acceptable terms, if at all in the future, or that product liability or other claims will not exceed the amount of insurance coverage, or that all such matters would be covered by our insurance. As a result, these types of claims could have a material adverse effect on our business, operating results and financial condition.

Our judgments regarding the accounting for tax positions and the resolution of tax disputes may impact our net earnings and cash flow.

Significant judgment is required to determine our effective tax rate and evaluate our tax positions. We provide for uncertain tax positions when such tax positions do not meet the recognition thresholds or measurement criteria prescribed by applicable accounting standards. Fluctuations in federal, state, local and foreign taxes or a change to uncertain tax positions, including related interest and penalties, may impact our effective tax rate and financial results. Additionally, we are subject to audits in the various taxing jurisdictions in which we conduct business. In cases where audits are conducted and issues are raised, a number of years may elapse before such issues are finally resolved. Unfavorable resolution of any tax matter could increase the effective tax rate, which could have an adverse effect on our operating results and cash flow. For additional information regarding our taxes, see Note 21 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

Changes in laws, including tax laws, and the costs and complexities of compliance with such laws could have a material adverse impact on our business.

The impact of future legislation in the U.S. or abroad, including such things as employment and health insurance laws, climate change related legislation, tax legislation, regulations or treaties is always uncertain. Federal and local legislative agendas from time to time contain numerous proposals dealing with taxes, financial regulation, energy policy, environmental policy, transportation policy and infrastructure policy, among others that, if enacted into law, could increase our costs of doing business.

The Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017 (the "Tax Act") was enacted on December 22, 2017, and significantly affected U.S. tax law by changing how the U.S. imposes income tax. The U.S. Department of Treasury has broad authority to issue regulations and interpretative guidance that may significantly impact how we will apply the law and impact our results of operations in the period issued.

Table of Contents

The Tax Act requires complex computations not previously provided in U.S. tax law. As such, the application of accounting guidance for such items is currently uncertain. Further, compliance with the Tax Act and the accounting for such provisions require accumulation of information not previously required or regularly produced. As additional regulatory guidance is issued by the applicable taxing authorities, as accounting treatment is clarified, as we perform additional analysis on the application of the law, and as we refine estimates in calculating the effect, our final analysis, which will be recorded in the period completed, may be different from our current provisional amounts, which could materially affect our tax obligations and effective tax rate.

Under current tax law, favorable tax treatment of our non-U.S. income is dependent on our ability to avoid classification as a Controlled Foreign Corporation. Changes in the composition of our stock ownership could have an impact on our classification. If our classification were to change, it could have a material adverse effect on the largest U.S. shareholders and, in turn, on our business.

A non-U.S. corporation, such as ours, will constitute a "controlled foreign corporation" or "CFC" for U.S. federal income tax purposes if its largest U.S. shareholders together own more than 50 percent of the stock outstanding. A U.S. shareholder is defined as any U.S. person who owns directly, indirectly, or constructively: (1) 10 percent or more of the total combined voting power of all classes of stock, or (2) 10 percent or more of the total value of shares of all classes of stock. If the IRS or a court determined that we were a CFC at any time during the tax year, then each of our U.S. shareholders as defined above would be required to include in gross income for U.S. federal income tax purposes its pro rata share of our "subpart F income" (and the subpart F income of any of our subsidiaries determined to be a CFC) for the period during which we (and our non-U.S. subsidiaries) were deemed a CFC. In addition, any gain on the sale of our shares realized by such a shareholder may be treated as ordinary income to the extent of the shareholder's proportionate share of our and our CFC subsidiaries' undistributed earnings and profits accumulated during the shareholder's holding period of the shares while we were deemed to be a CFC.

| ltem | 1B. | Unresolved | Staff | Comments |
|--------|------|-------------------|-------|----------|
| 110111 | ı D. | | Otan | |

| None. | |
|-------|--|
|-------|--|

Item 2. Properties

As of February 28, 2018, we own, lease or otherwise utilize through third-party management service agreements, a total of 41 properties worldwide, which include selling, procurement, research and development, administrative, distribution facilities, and 35 acres of land held for expansion. All properties operated by us are adequate for their intended purpose.

Properties we own by location, type and use, segment and approximate size are listed below:

| Location | Type and Use | Business Segment | Approximate Size (Square Feet) |
|--------------------------------|---|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Owned Properties | | | |
| El Paso, Texas, USA | Land & Building - U.S. Headquarters | All Segments | 135,000 |
| El Paso, Texas, USA | Land & Building - Distribution Facility | Housewares, Health & Home and Beauty | 408,000 |
| Olive Branch, Mississippi, USA | Land & Building - Distribution Facility | Health & Home and Beauty | 1,300,000 |
| Southaven, Mississippi, USA | Land & Building - Distribution Facility | Housewares, Beauty | 1,200,000 |
| Sheffield, England | Land & Building - Office Space | Housewares, Health & Home and Beauty | 10,400 |
| Mexico City, Mexico | Land & Building - Office Space | Health & Home and Beauty | 3,900 |

The number of properties we lease or otherwise utilize by type and use and segment are listed below:

| Segments Served | Office Space | Distribution Facility | Total |
|-----------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------|---------|
| All Segments | 6 | - | 6 |
| Multiple Segments | - | 1 | 1 |
| Housewares | 7 | 3 | 10 |
| Health & Home | 6 | 2 | 8 |
| Beauty | 4 | 6 | 10 |
| Other | 23 | 12 | 35 |
| Approximate square footage of all | | | |
| properties leased or otherwise | | | |
| utilized | 258,236 | 644,728 | 902,964 |

Item 3. Legal Proceedings

We are involved in various legal claims and proceedings in the normal course of operations. In the opinion of management, the outcome of these matters will not have a material adverse effect on our consolidated financial position, operating results or liquidity. See Note 14 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements for a further discussion.

Item 4. Mine Safety Disclosures

Not applicable.

PART II

Item 5. Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

Price Range of Common Stock

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Global Select Market ("NASDAQ") [symbol: HELE]. The following table provides for the latest two fiscal years, in dollars per share, the high and low sales prices of the common stock reported on the NASDAQ. Quotations are inter-dealer prices, without retail markup, markdown or commission and may not represent actual transactions.

| High | | |
|-------|-------|--|
| | | |
| 25 \$ | 85.50 | |
| 88 | 87.45 | |
| 25 | 85.40 | |
| 55 | 83.60 | |
| | | |
| 14 \$ | 91.38 | |
| 18 | 89.60 | |
| 75 | 77.50 | |
| 55 | 79.90 | |
| - | | |

Approximate Number of Equity Security Holders of Record

Our common stock is our only class of equity security outstanding at February 28, 2018. As of April 21, 2018, there were 152 holders of record of our common stock. A substantially greater number of holders of our common stock are "street name" or beneficial holders whose shares are held of record by banks, brokers and other financial institutions.

Cash Dividends

Our current policy is to retain earnings to provide funds for the operation and expansion of our business, common stock repurchases and for potential acquisitions. We have not paid any cash dividends on our common stock since inception. Any change in dividend policy will depend upon future conditions, including earnings and financial condition, general business conditions, any applicable contractual limitations, and other factors deemed relevant by our Board of Directors. Generally, our Credit Agreement limits our ability to declare or pay cash dividends to our shareholders if, (1) the Leverage Ratio (as defined in the Credit Agreement) on a pro forma basis is greater than 3.50 to 1.00, and (2) unrestricted cash, cash equivalents and availability for borrowings under the Credit Agreement is less than \$25 million.

Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities

On May 10, 2017, our Board of Directors authorized the repurchase of up to \$400 million of our outstanding common stock. The authorization is effective until May 2020 and replaced our former repurchase authorization, of which approximately \$82 million remained. These repurchases may include open market purchases, privately negotiated transactions, block trades, accelerated stock repurchase transactions, or any combination of such methods. The number of shares purchased and the timing of the purchases will depend on a number of factors, including share price, trading volume and general market conditions, working capital requirements, general business conditions, financial conditions, any applicable contractual limitations, and other factors, including alternative investment

opportunities. See Note 12 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements for additional information.

Our current equity-based compensation plans include provisions that allow for the "net exercise" of share settled awards by all plan participants. In a net exercise, any required payroll taxes, federal withholding taxes and exercise price of the shares due from the option or other share-based award holders are settled by having the holder tender back to us a number of shares at fair value equal to the amounts due. Net exercises are treated as purchases and retirements of shares.

The following table summarizes our share repurchase activity for the periods covered below:

| | Year Ended the Last Day of February | | | ebruary | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|---------|----|---------|----|-----------|
| (in thousands, except share and per share data) | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 |
| Common stock repurchased on the open market or through tender offer: | | | | | | |
| Number of shares | | 717,300 | | 922,731 | | 1,126,796 |
| Aggregate value of shares | \$ | 65,795 | \$ | 75,000 | \$ | 100,000 |
| Average price per share | \$ | 91.73 | \$ | 81.28 | \$ | 88.75 |
| | | | | | | |
| Common stock received in connection with share-based compensation: | | | | | | |
| Number of shares | | 75,785 | | 6,286 | | 117,294 |
| Aggregate value of shares | \$ | 7,258 | \$ | 595 | \$ | 6,411 |
| Average price per share | \$ | 95.77 | \$ | 94.61 | \$ | 54.66 |

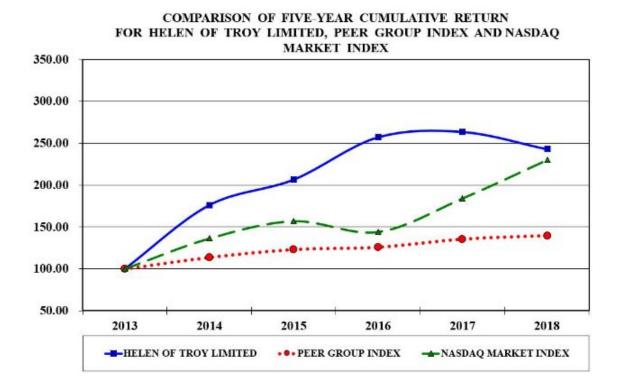
The following schedule sets forth the purchase activity for each month during the three months ended February 28, 2018:

ISSUER PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES FOR THE THREE MONTHS ENDED FEBRUARY 28, 2018

| Destruct | Total Number of | Average Price | Total Number of Shares Purchased as Part of Publicly Announced Plans | Maximum Dollar Value of Shares that May Yet be Purchased Under the Plans or Programs |
|--------------------------------------|------------------|----------------|---|--|
| Period | Shares Purchased | Paid per Share | or Programs | (in thousands) |
| December 1 through December 31, 2017 | 2,146 | \$ 94.08 | 2,146 | \$ 364,726 |
| January 1 through January 31, 2018 | 702 | 96.22 | 702 | 364,658 |
| February 1 through February 28, 2018 | 406,273 | 90.17 | 406,273 | 328,023 |
| Total | 409.121 | \$ 90.21 | 409.121 | |

Performance Graph

The graph below compares the cumulative total return of our Company to the NASDAQ Market Index and a Peer Group Index, assuming \$100 was invested on March 1, 2013. The Peer Group Index is the Dow Jones–U.S. Personal Products, Broad Market Cap, Yearly, and Total Return Index. The comparisons in this table are required by the SEC and are not intended to forecast or be indicative of the possible future performance of our common stock.



The Performance Graph shall not be deemed to be "soliciting material" or to be "filed" with the SEC or subject to the liabilities of Section 18 under the Exchange Act. In addition, it shall not be deemed incorporated by reference by any statement that incorporates this annual report on Form 10-K by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933 or the Exchange Act, except to the extent that we specifically incorporate this information by reference.

Cash dividends

Item 6. Selected Financial Data

The selected consolidated statements of income and cash flow data for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, and the selected consolidated balance sheet data as of the end of fiscal 2018 and 2017, have been derived from our audited consolidated financial statements included in this report. The selected consolidated statements of income and cash flow data for fiscal 2015 and 2014, and the selected consolidated balance sheet data as of the end fiscal 2016, 2015 and 2014, have been derived from our audited consolidated financial statements, which are not included in this report. This information should be read together with the discussion in "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and our consolidated financial statements and notes to those statements included in this report. All currency amounts are denominated in U.S. Dollars. In December 2017, we sold our former Nutritional Supplements segment. The operating results of this segment are presented as discontinued operations for all applicable periods presented. Additional information related to the sale of our former Nutritional Supplements segment is included in Note 4 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

| (in thousands, except per share data) | | 2018 (1) (2) | | 2017 (1) (2) | | 2016 (1) (2) | | 2015 ⁽¹⁾ | | 2014 |
|--|------|------------------|------|--------------|----|-------------------|----|---------------------|----|-----------|
| Income Statement Data: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 1,489,747 | \$ | 1,406,676 | \$ | 1,392,575 | \$ | 1,344,736 | \$ | 1,317,153 |
| Gross profit | | 622,101 | | 582,557 | | 525,734 | | 526,672 | | 516,703 |
| Asset impairment charges | | 15,447 | | 2,900 | | 6,000 | | 9,000 | | 12,049 |
| Operating income | | 169,062 | | 169,664 | | 116,294 | | 152,215 | | 117,100 |
| Interest expense | | 13,951 | | 14,361 | | 10,581 | | 14,079 | | 10,193 |
| Income tax expense | | 26,556 | | 11,407 | | 13,021 | | 12,332 | | 20,886 |
| Income from continuing operations | | 128,882 | | 144,310 | | 92,991 | | 126,322 | | 86,248 |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations, net of tax | | (84,436) | | (3,621) | | 8,237 | | 4,842 | | - |
| Net income | | 44,446 | | 140,689 | | 101,228 | | 131,164 | | 86,248 |
| Earnings (loss) per share - basic | | | | | | | | | | |
| Continuing operations | \$ | 4.76 | \$ | 5.24 | \$ | 3.29 | \$ | 4.42 | \$ | 2.69 |
| Discontinued operations | | (3.12) | | (0.13) | | 0.29 | | 0.17 | | - |
| Net income | \$ | 1.64 | \$ | 5.11 | \$ | 3.58 | \$ | 4.59 | \$ | 2.69 |
| Formings (loss) you show diluted | | | | | | | | | | |
| Earnings (loss) per share - diluted | Φ. | 4 70 | æ | F 47 | Φ. | 2.22 | Φ. | 4.05 | Φ. | 2.00 |
| Continuing operations Discontinued operations | \$ | 4.73 (3.10) | \$ | 5.17 | \$ | 3.23 0.29 | \$ | 4.35 0.17 | \$ | 2.66 |
| • | Φ. | | Φ. | (0.13) | Φ. | 3.52 | Φ. | | Φ. | 2.00 |
| Net income | \$ | 1.63 | \$ | 5.04 | \$ | 3.32 | \$ | 4.52 | \$ | 2.66 |
| Weighted average shares outstanding - basic | | 27,077 | | 27,522 | | 28,273 | | 28,579 | | 32,007 |
| Weighted average shares outstanding - diluted | | 27,254 | | 27,891 | | 28,749 | | 29,035 | | 32,386 |
| Cash Flow Data from Continuing Operations: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Depreciation and amortization | \$ | 33,730 | \$ | 36.175 | \$ | 34,889 | \$ | 34,213 | \$ | 33.839 |
| Net cash provided by operating activities (3) | | 218,609 | Ť | 212,491 | | 170,263 | | 171,742 | | 154,165 |
| Capital and intangible asset expenditures | | 13,605 | | 15,507 | | 16,676 | | 5,908 | | 40,463 |
| Payments to acquire businesses, net of cash acquired | | _ | | 209,267 | | 43,150 | | 195,943 | | · - |
| Net amounts borrowed (repaid) | | (197,000) | | (133,200) | | 190,700 | | 240,600 | | (64,393) |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| (in thousands) | 201 | 8 ⁽¹⁾ | 201 | 7 (1) | 20 | 16 ⁽¹⁾ | | 2015 | | 2014 |
| Balance Sheet Data from Continuing Operations: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Working capital (3) | | 58,222 \$ | | 67,897 \$ | | , | \$ | 308,895 | \$ | 286,122 |
| Goodwill and other intangible assets | |)5,235 | | 38,324 | | 762,879 | | 746,542 | | 775,550 |
| Total assets (3) | | 21,320 | , | 13,942 | | 556,262 | 1 | 1,440,130 | | 1,533,302 |
| Long-term debt (3) | | 37,985 | | 31,211 | | 300,107 | | 411,307 | | 95,707 |
| Stockholders' equity (4) | 1,01 | 14,459 | 1,02 | 20,766 | (| 930,043 | | 904,565 | | 1,029,487 |

⁽¹⁾ In December 2017, we divested our former Nutritional Supplements segment, which is reported as discontinued operations. For more information see Note 4 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

Table of Contents

- (2) Includes the material impact of new business acquisitions as follows:
 - Fiscal 2017 includes eleven and one-half months of operating results from the acquisition of Hydro Flask, acquired for a net cash purchase price of \$209.3 million. Fiscal 2018 and thereafter includes a full year of operating results.
 - Fiscal 2016 includes eleven months of operating results from the Vicks VapoSteam inhalant business acquired for a net cash purchase price of \$42.8 million. Fiscal 2017 and thereafter includes a full year of operating results.
- (3) Fiscal 2016 and 2015 include certain reclassifications to conform with fiscal 2017 adopted accounting changes.
- (4) During fiscal 2018, 2017, 2016, 2015 and 2014, we repurchased and retired 793,085, 929,017, 1,244,090, 4,174,093 and 146,539 shares of common stock having total cost of \$73.1, \$75.6, \$106.4, \$278.4 and \$8.2 million, respectively.

Information Regarding Forward-Looking Statements

Certain written and oral statements in this Form 10-K may constitute "forward-looking statements" as defined under the Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995. This includes statements made in this report, in other filings with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "SEC"), in press releases, and in certain other oral and written presentations. Generally, the words "anticipates", "believes", "expects", "plans", "may", "will", "should", "seeks", "estimates", "project", "predict", "potential", "continue", "intends", and other similar words identify forward-looking statements. All statements that address operating results, events or developments that may occur in the future, including statements related to sales, earnings per share results, and statements expressing general expectations about future operating results, are forward-looking statements and are based upon our current expectations and various assumptions. We believe there is a reasonable basis for our expectations and assumptions, but there can be no assurance that we will realize our expectations or that our assumptions will prove correct. Forward-looking statements are subject to risks that could cause them to differ materially from actual results. Accordingly, we caution readers not to place undue reliance on forward-looking statements. We believe that these risks include but are not limited to the risks described in this report under Item 1A., "Risk Factors" and that are otherwise described from time to time in our SEC reports as filed. We undertake no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements as a result of new information, future events or otherwise.

Item 7. Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations

This Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations ("MD&A") should be read in conjunction with the other sections of this report, including Part I, Item 1., "Business"; Part II, Item 6., "Selected Financial Data"; and Part II, Item 8., "Financial Statements and Supplementary Data." The various sections of this MD&A contain a number of forward-looking statements, all of which are based on our current expectations. Actual results may differ materially due to a number of factors, including those discussed in Item 1A., "Risk Factors," and in the section entitled "Information Regarding Forward-Looking Statements," preceding this MD&A, and in Item 7A., "Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk." Throughout MD&A, we refer to our Leadership Brands, which are brands that have number-one and number-two positions in their respective categories and include OXO, Honeywell, Braun, PUR, Hydro Flask, Vicks, and Hot Tools.

Throughout MD&A, we refer to certain measures used by management to evaluate financial performance. We also may refer to a number of financial measures that are not defined under GAAP, but have corresponding GAAP-based measures. Where non-GAAP measures appear, we provide tables reconciling these to their corresponding GAAP-based measures and refer to a discussion of their use. We believe these measures provide investors with important information that is useful in understanding our business results and trends.

Overview

We are a leading global consumer products company offering creative products and solutions for our customers through a diversified portfolio of well-recognized and widely-trusted brands. We have built leading market positions through new product innovation, product quality and competitive pricing. We currently operate in three segments consisting of Housewares, Health & Home and Beauty. In fiscal 2015, we launched a transformational strategy to improve the performance of our business segments and strengthen our shared service capabilities. We believe we continue to make progress on achieving our strategic objectives.

Fiscal 2018 - Significant Developments

An overview of our significant developments are provided below:

- On October 5, 2017, we announced that we had approved a restructuring plan (referred to as "Project Refuel") intended to enhance the performance primarily in the Beauty and Nutritional Supplements segments. Following the divestiture of our former Nutritional Supplements segment, we are targeting total annualized profit improvements of approximately \$8.0 million over the duration of the plan. We estimate the plan to be completed by the first quarter of fiscal 2020 and expect to incur total restructuring charges in the range of approximately \$3.2 to \$4.8 million over the period. Fiscal 2018 includes pre-tax restructuring charges of \$1.9 million assocated with Project Refuel. Project Refuel includes a reduction-in-force and the elimination of certain contracts. See Note 13 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements for additional information.
- On December 20, 2017, we completed the divestiture of the Nutritional Supplements segment
 through the sale of Healthy Directions LLC and its subsidiaries to Direct Digital, LLC. The
 purchase price from the sale is comprised of \$46 million in cash, paid at closing, and a
 supplemental payment targeted at \$25.0 million payable on or before August 1, 2019. See Note 4
 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements for additional information.
- On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") was enacted into law. Among other changes, the Tax Act lowered the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% and established a modified territorial system requiring mandatory deemed repatriation tax on undistributed earnings of certain foreign subsidiaries. The rate change is effective at the beginning of calendar year 2018 and, as a result, we have a blended U.S. federal statutory tax rate of 32.7% for fiscal 2018. As a result of the enactment, we have recorded a provisional tax expense of \$17.9 million related to the one-time remeasurement of our U.S. deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse in the future, the one-time repatriation tax applied to our undistributed foreign earnings, and the impact of executive compensation that is no longer deductible under the Tax Act. On an ongoing basis, we expect that the Tax Act will result in a reduction to our annual effective tax rate of approximately one percentage point, primarily due to the reduction in the U.S. corporate income tax rate.
- During fiscal 2018, we repurchased 793,085 shares of our common stock at an average price of \$92.13 per share for a total cost of \$73.1 million.
- During fiscal 2018, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges of \$15.4 million (\$13.8 million after tax) related to certain trademarks in the Beauty segment.

Significant Trends Impacting the Business

Foreign Currency Exchange Rate Fluctuations

Due to the nature of our operations, we have exposure to the impact of fluctuations in exchange rates from transactions that are denominated in a currency other than our reporting currency (the U.S. Dollar). The most significant currencies affecting our operating results are the British Pound, Euro, Canadian Dollar, and Mexican Peso. For fiscal 2018, changes in foreign currency exchange rates had a favorable impact on consolidated U.S. Dollar reported net sales revenue of approximately \$5.2 million, or 0.4%. For fiscal 2017, changes in foreign currency exchange rates had an unfavorable impact on consolidated U.S. Dollar reported net sales revenue of approximately \$9.7 million, or 0.7%.

Consumer Spending and Changes in Shopping Preferences

Our business depends upon discretionary consumer demand for most of our products and primarily operates within mature and highly developed consumer markets. The principal driver of our operating performance is the strength of the U.S. retail economy, as approximately 79%, 79% and 78% of our consolidated net sales were from U.S. shipments in fiscal 2018, 2017, and 2016 respectively. Additionally, the shift in consumer shopping preferences to online or multichannel shopping experiences has shifted the concentration of our sales. For fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, our net sales to customers fulfilling end-consumer online orders and online sales directly to consumers comprised approximately 15%, 12% and 9%, respectively, of our total consolidated net sales revenue for each fiscal year and grew over 30% in fiscal 2018. With the continued growth in online sales across the retail landscape, many brick and mortar retailers are aggressively looking for ways to improve their customer delivery capabilities to be able to meet customer expectations. As a result, it will become increasingly important for us to leverage our distribution capabilities in order to meet the changing demands of our customers, as well as to increase our online capabilities to support our direct-to-consumer sales channels and online channel sales by our retail customers.

Variability of the Cough/Cold/Flu Season

Sales in several of our Health & Home segment categories are highly correlated to the severity of winter weather and cough/cold/flu incidence. In the U.S., the cough/cold/flu season historically runs from November through March, with peak activity normally in January to March. For the 2017-2018 season, fall and winter weather was unseasonably cold and cough/cold/flu incidence was significantly higher than the 2016-2017 season, which was a below average season.

Results of Operations

The following table provides selected operating data, in U.S. Dollars, as a percentage of net sales revenue, and as a year-over-year percentage change.

| | the | Last | l Years Ende Day of Febr | | % of Sale | s Revenue, | net (3) | % Cha | inge |
|--|-------------------------|------|-----------------------------|---------------|-----------|------------|---------|---------|----------|
| (in thousands) | 2018 ^{(1) (2)} | | 2017 ^{(1) (2)} | 2016 (1) | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 18/17 | 17/16 |
| Sales revenue by segment, net | | | | | | | | | |
| Housewares | \$ 457,819 | \$ | 418,128 | \$ 310,663 | 30.7 % | 29.7 % | 22.3 % | 9.5 % | 34.6 % |
| Health & Home | 682,605 | | 632,769 | 642,735 | 45.8 % | 45.0 % | 46.2 % | 7.9 % | (1.6)% |
| Beauty | 349,323 | | 355,779 | 439,177 | 23.4 % | 25.3 % | 31.5 % | (1.8)% | (19.0)% |
| Total sales revenue, net | 1,489,747 | | 1,406,676 | 1,392,575 | 100.0 % | 100.0 % | 100.0 % | 5.9 % | 1.0 % |
| Cost of goods sold | 867,646 | | 824,119 | 866,841 | 58.2 % | 58.6 % | 62.2 % | 5.3 % | (4.9)% |
| Gross profit | 622,101 | | 582,557 | 525,734 | 41.8 % | 41.4 % | 37.8 % | 6.8 % | 10.8 % |
| Selling, general and administrative expense (SG&A) | 435,735 | | 409,993 | 403,440 | 29.2 % | 29.1 % | 29.0 % | 6.3 % | 1.6 % |
| Asset impairment charges | 15,447 | | 2,900 | 6,000 | 1.0 % | 0.2 % | 0.4 % | * | (51.7)% |
| Restructuring charges | 1,857 | | - | - | 0.1 % | - % | - % | * | - % |
| Operating income | 169,062 | | 169,664 | 116,294 | 11.3 % | 12.1 % | 8.4 % | (0.4)% | 45.9 % |
| Nonoperating income, net | 327 | | 414 | 299 | - % | - % | - % | (21.0)% | 38.5 % |
| Interest expense | (13,951) | | (14,361) | (10,581) | (0.9)% | (1.0)% | (0.8)% | (2.9)% | 35.7 % |
| Income before income tax | 155,438 | | 155,717 | 106,012 | 10.4 % | 11.1 % | 7.6 % | (0.2)% | 46.9 % |
| Income tax expense | 26,556 | | 11,407 | 13,021 | 1.8 % | 0.8 % | 0.9 % | 132.8 % | (12.4)% |
| Income from continuing operations | 128,882 | | 144,310 | 92,991 | 8.7 % | 10.3 % | 6.7 % | (10.7)% | 55.2 % |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations (1) | (84,436) | | (3,621) | 8,237 | (5.7)% | (0.3)% | 0.6 % | * | (144.0)% |
| Net income | \$ 44,446 | \$ | 140,689 | \$ 101,228 | 3.0 % | 10.0 % | 7.3 % | (68.4)% | 39.0 % |

- (1) During fiscal 2018, we divested our Nutritional Supplements segment, which is reported as discontinued operations for all periods presented. For more information see Note 4 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.
- (2) Fiscal 2017 includes eleven and one-half months of operating results for Hydro Flask, acquired on March 18, 2016. Fiscal 2018 includes a full year of operating results for Hydro Flask.
- (3) Sales revenue percentages by segment are computed as a percentage of the related segment's net sales revenue to total net sales revenue. All other percentages are computed as a percentage of total net sales revenue.
- * Not meaningful.

Fiscal 2018 Financial Results

- Consolidated net sales revenue increased 5.9% or \$83.1 million, to \$1,489.7 million in fiscal 2018 compared to \$1,406.7 million in fiscal 2017.
- Consolidated operating income decreased 0.4%, or \$0.6 million, to \$169.1 million for fiscal 2018 compared to \$169.7 million in fiscal 2017. Consolidated operating margin decreased 0.8 percentage points to 11.3% of consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018 compared to 12.1% in fiscal 2017. Fiscal 2018 includes pre-tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$15.4 million, a charge related to the bankruptcy of Toys 'R' Us ("TRU") of \$3.6 million and restructuring charges of \$1.9 million. Fiscal 2017 includes non-cash asset impairment charges of \$2.9 million and a patent litigation charge of \$1.5 million.
- Consolidated adjusted operating income increased 6.7%, or \$14.0 million, to \$223.9 million for fiscal 2018 compared to \$209.9 million in fiscal 2017. Consolidated adjusted operating margin increased 0.1 percentage point to 15.0% of consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2018 compared to 14.9% in fiscal 2017.
- Income from continuing operations decreased 10.7%, or \$15.4 million, to \$128.9 million in fiscal 2018 compared to \$144.3 million in fiscal 2017. Diluted earnings per share ("EPS") from continuing operations decreased 8.5% to \$4.73 in fiscal 2018 compared to \$5.17 in fiscal 2017.

- Adjusted income from continuing operations increased 9.0% to \$197.2 million in fiscal 2018, compared to \$180.9 million in fiscal 2017. Adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations increased 11.6% to \$7.24 in fiscal 2018 compared to \$6.49 in fiscal 2017.
- Loss from discontinued operations, net of tax, increased to (\$84.4) million for fiscal 2018, compared to (\$3.6) million for fiscal 2017. Diluted loss per share from discontinued operations was (\$3.10) for fiscal 2018 compared to (\$0.13) for fiscal 2017. Fiscal 2018 includes after tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$83.5 million, restructuring charges of \$0.4 million and a gain on the sale of discontinued operations of \$1.0 million. Fiscal 2017 includes after tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$5.9 million.
- Net income was \$44.4 million for fiscal 2018 compared to \$140.7 million for fiscal 2017. Diluted EPS was \$1.63 for fiscal 2018 compared to \$5.04 for fiscal 2017.

Fiscal 2017 Financial Results

- Consolidated net sales revenue increased 1.0%, or \$14.1 million, to \$1,406.7 million in fiscal 2017 compared to \$1,392.6 million fiscal 2016.
- Consolidated operating income increased 45.9%, or \$53.4 million, to \$169.7 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$116.3 million in fiscal 2016. Consolidated operating margin increased 3.7 percentage points to 12.1% of consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2017 compared to 8.4% in fiscal 2016. Fiscal 2017 included pre-tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$2.9 million and a patent litigation charge of \$1.5 million. Fiscal 2016 included asset impairment charges of \$6.0 million, CEO succession costs of \$6.0 million, acquisition-related expenses of \$0.7 million, Venezuelan remeasurement-related charges of \$18.7 million and patent litigation charges of \$17.8 million.
- Consolidated adjusted operating income increased 8.1%, or \$15.7 million, to \$209.9 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$194.2 million in fiscal 2016. Consolidated adjusted operating margin increased 1.0 percentage points to 14.9% of consolidated net sales revenue in fiscal 2017 compared to 13.9% in fiscal 2016.
- Income from continuing operations increased 55.2%, or \$51.3 million, to \$144.3 million in fiscal 2017 compared to \$93.0 million in fiscal 2016. Diluted EPS from continuing operations increased 60.1% to \$5.17 in fiscal 2017 compared to \$3.23 in fiscal 2016.
- Adjusted income from continuing operations increased 8.3% to \$180.9 million in fiscal 2017, compared to \$166.9 million in fiscal 2016. Adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations increased 12.3% to \$6.49 in fiscal 2017 compared to \$5.78 in fiscal 2016.
- Loss from discontinued operations, net of tax, was \$3.6 million for fiscal 2017 and included after tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$5.9 million, compared to income from discontinued operations, net of tax, of \$8.2 million in fiscal 2016. Diluted loss per share from discontinued operations was \$(0.13) in fiscal 2017 compared to earnings per share of \$0.29 in fiscal 2016.
- Net income was \$140.7 for fiscal 2017 versus \$101.2 million for fiscal 2016. Diluted EPS was \$5.04 for fiscal 2017 compared to \$3.52 for fiscal 2016.

Adjusted operating income, adjusted operating margin, adjusted income from continuing operations, and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations as discussed below and on the pages that follow are non

- GAAP financial measures as contemplated by SEC Regulation G, Rule 100. These measures

are discussed further, and reconciled to their applicable GAAP - based measures contained in this MD&A

on pages 34, 38 and 39.

Geographic Net Sales Revenue

The following table provides net sales revenue by geographic region, in U.S. Dollars, as a percentage of net sales revenue, and the year-over-year percentage change in each region.

| Fiscal Years Ended | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|--------------|----------------|-------------|-----------|----------|---------|--------|---------|--|--|--|
| | the L | ast Day of Feb | ruary, | % of Sale | es Reven | ue, net | % Cha | inge | | | |
| (in thousands) | 2018 (1) | 2017 (1) | 2016 | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | 18/17 | 17/16 | | | |
| Sales revenue, net by geographic region | | | | | | | | | | | |
| United States | \$ 1,168,888 | \$1,111,109 | \$1,080,337 | 78.5 % | 79.0 % | 77.6 % | 5.2 % | 2.8 % | | | |
| Canada | 60,504 | 60,002 | 57,482 | 4.1 % | 4.3 % | 4.1 % | 0.8 % | 4.4 % | | | |
| EMEA | 145,492 | 134,546 | 139,911 | 9.8 % | 9.6 % | 10.0 % | 8.1 % | (3.8)% | | | |
| Asia Pacific | 75,616 | 60,689 | 51,575 | 5.1 % | 4.3 % | 3.7 % | 24.6 % | 17.7 % | | | |
| Latin America | 39,247 | 40,330 | 63,270 | 2.6 % | 2.9 % | 4.5 % | (2.7)% | (36.3)% | | | |
| Total sales revenue, net | \$1,489,747 | \$1,406,676 | \$1,392,575 | 100.0 % | 100.0 % | 100.0 % | 5.9 % | 1.0 % | | | |

- (1) Fiscal 2017 includes eleven and one-half months of operating results for Hydro Flask, acquired on March 18, 2016. Fiscal 2018 includes a full year of operating results for Hydro Flask.
- (2) Sales revenue percentages by segment are computed as a percentage of the related segment's net sales revenue to total net sales revenue. All other percentages are computed as a percentage of total net sales revenue.

In fiscal 2018, U.S. sales increased 5.2% compared to fiscal 2017, primarily driven by core business growth. International sales increased 8.6% compared to fiscal 2017, primarily from growth in EMEA and Asia Pacific.

In fiscal 2017, U.S. sales grew 2.8% compared to fiscal 2016, primarily driven by the contribution from the Hydro Flask acquisition. International sales declined 5.3% primarily from declines in EMEA and Latin America due to foreign currency fluctuations and the re-measurement of our Venezuelan financial statements in fiscal 2017, which were partially offset by growth in Canada and Asia Pacific.

Comparison of Fiscal 2018 to Fiscal 2017

Consolidated and Segment Net Sales

The following table summarizes the impact that acquisitions, foreign currency and Venezuela remeasurement had on our net sales revenue by segment:

| | | | Year Ended Febru | ary 2 | 8, 2018 | | |
|--------------------------------|----------------|--------|------------------|-------|---------|----|-----------|
| (in thousands) | Housewares | | Health & Home | | Beauty | | Total |
| Fiscal 2017 sales revenue, net | \$ 418,128 | \$ | 632,769 | \$ | 355,779 | \$ | 1,406,676 |
| Core business | 33,467 | | 45,937 | | (7,661) | | 71,743 |
| Impact of foreign currency | 76 | | 3,899 | | 1,205 | | 5,180 |
| Acquisitions (1) | 6,148 | | - | | - | | 6,148 |
| Change in sales revenue, net | 39,691 | | 49,836 | | (6,456) | | 83,071 |
| Fiscal 2018 sales revenue, net | \$ 457,819 | \$ | 682,605 | \$ | 349,323 | \$ | 1,489,747 |
| Total net sales revenue growth | 9.5 % | o o | 7.9 % | 6 | (1.8)% | 6 | 5.9 % |
| Core business | 8.0 % | , 0 | 7.3 % | 6 | (2.2)% | 6 | 5.1 % |
| Impact of foreign currency | - % | , 0 | 0.6 % | 6 | 0.3 % | 6 | 0.4 % |
| Acquisitions | 1.5 % | , 0 | - % | 6 | - 9 | 6 | 0.4 % |

⁽¹⁾ Includes approximately one-half month of incremental operating results for Hydro Flask, which was acquired on March 18, 2016.

In the above table core business refers to our net sales revenue associated with product lines or brands after the first twelve months from the date the product line or brand is acquired, excluding the impact

that foreign currency re-measurement had on reported net sales. Net sales revenue from internally developed brands or product lines is considered core business activity.

Consolidated Net Sales Revenue

Consolidated net sales revenue increased \$83.1 million, or 5.9%, to \$1,489.7 million for fiscal 2018, compared to \$1,406.7 million for fiscal 2017. The increase was primarily driven by:

- a core business increase of \$71.7 million, or 5.1%, primarily due to new product introductions, online customer growth, incremental distribution and growth in international sales;
- growth from acquisitions of \$6.1 million or 0.4%; and
- the favorable impact from foreign currency fluctuations of approximately \$5.2 million, or 0.4%.

These factors were partially offset by:

- a decline in the personal care category within Beauty; and
- the impact of lower store traffic and soft consumer spending at traditional brick and mortar retail.

Segment Net Sales Revenue

Housewares

Net sales revenue in the Housewares segment increased \$39.7 million, or 9.5%, to \$457.8 million for fiscal 2018, compared to \$418.1 million for fiscal 2017. The change was primarily driven by:

- a core business increase of \$33.5 million, or 8.0%, due to an increase in online sales, incremental
 distribution with existing customers, expanded international and U.S. distribution, new product
 introductions for both the Hydro Flask and OXO brands, increased marketing investments and
 promotional activity, and higher sales in the discount channel; and
- growth from acquisitions of \$6.1 million, or 1.5%, representing an incremental one-half month of operating results from Hydro Flask in fiscal 2018, compared to the same period last year.

These factors were partially offset by:

- lower store traffic and soft consumer spending at traditional brick and mortar retail; and
- the unfavorable comparative impact of retail pipeline fill and strong sales into the club channel in the prior year period.

Health & Home

Net sales revenue in the Health & Home segment increased \$49.8 million, or 7.9%, to \$682.6 million for fiscal 2018, compared to \$632.8 million for fiscal 2017. The change was primarily driven by core business growth of 7.3%, which benefitted from strong cough/cold/flu incidence along with unseasonably cold fall and winter weather, compared to below average cough/cold/flu incidence and milder weather in the same period last year. Growth was also driven by an increase in online sales, incremental distribution and shelf space gains with existing customers and an increase in international sales. Core business sales increases were partially offset by lower sales into the club channel and lower royalty revenue. Foreign currency fluctuations had a favorable impact on total segment sales of approximately \$3.9 million, or 0.6%.

Beauty

Net sales revenue in the Beauty segment decreased \$6.5 million, or 1.8%, to \$349.3 million for fiscal 2018, compared to \$355.8 million for fiscal 2017. The change was primarily driven by a decline in the personal care category, which was partially offset by solid growth in both retail and professional appliance sales, particularly to online retail customers. Segment net sales were favorably impacted by foreign currency fluctuations of approximately \$1.2 million, or 0.3%.

Gross Profit Margin

Consolidated gross profit margin for fiscal 2018 increased 0.4 percentage points to 41.8%, compared to 41.4% for fiscal 2017. The increase in consolidated gross profit margin is primarily due to the favorable impact from growth in our Leadership Brands, a higher margin product mix and the favorable impact from foreign currency fluctuations. These factors were partially offset by channel mix and higher promotional spending.

Selling General and Administrative Expense

Our consolidated SG&A ratio increased 0.1 percentage point to 29.2% for fiscal 2018, compared to 29.1% for fiscal 2017. The increase in consolidated SG&A ratio is primarily due to:

- a \$3.6 million charge related to the bankruptcy of TRU;
- higher overall marketing, advertising and new product development expense in support of our Leadership Brands; and
- an unfavorable impact from foreign currency exchange and forward contract settlements.

These factors were partially offset by:

- the favorable comparative impact of a \$1.5 million patent litigation charge in the same period last year;
- improved distribution and logistics efficiency and lower outbound freight expense; and
- the favorable impact that higher overall sales had on operating leverage.

Asset Impairment Charges

Fiscal 2018

As a result of our interim and annual testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges of \$15.4 million (\$13.8 million after tax) in continuing operations. The charges were related to certain trademarks in our Beauty segment.

Fiscal 2017

As a result of our interim and annual testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges of \$2.9 million (\$2.5 million after tax) in continuing operations. The charges were related to certain trademarks in our Beauty segment.

Operating income, operating margin, adjusted operating income (non-GAAP), and adjusted operating margin (non-GAAP) by segment

In order to provide a better understanding of the comparative impact of certain items on operating income,

the tables that follow report the comparative before tax impact of non - cash asset impairment charges,

restructuring charges, the TRU bankruptcy charge, CEO succession costs, acquisition - related expenses,

Venezuelan currency re-measurement related charges, patent litigation charges, amortization of

intangible assets, and non - cash share - based compensation, as applicable, on operating income and

operating margin for each segment and in total for the periods covered below. Adjusted operating income and adjusted operating margin may be considered non-GAAP financial measures as contemplated by SEC Regulation G, Rule 100. These measures are discussed further in this MD&A on pages 38 and 39.

| | Year Ended February 28, 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|-----------|---------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| (In thousands) | Housewa | Total | | | | | | | | | | |
| Operating income, as reported (GAAP) | \$ 89,319 | 19.5 % | \$ 62,099 | 9.1 % | \$ 17,644 | 5.1 % \$ | 169,062 | 11.3 % | | | | |
| Asset impairment charges | - | - % | - | - % | 15,447 | 4.4 % | 15,447 | 1.0 % | | | | |
| Restructuring charges | 220 | - % | - | - % | 1,637 | 2.0 % | 1,857 | 0.5 % | | | | |
| TRU bankruptcy charge | 956 | 0.2 % | 2,640 | 0.4 % | - | - % | 3,596 | 0.2 % | | | | |
| Subtotal | 90,495 | 19.8 % | 64,739 | 9.5 % | 34,728 | 9.9 % | 189,962 | 12.8 % | | | | |
| Amortization of intangible assets | 2,226 | 0.5 % | 11,101 | 1.6 % | 5,527 | 1.6 % | 18,854 | 1.3 % | | | | |
| Non-cash share-based compensation | 4,701 | 1.0 % | 5,721 | 0.8 % | 4,632 | 1.3 % | 15,054 | 1.0 % | | | | |
| Adjusted operating income (non-GAAP) | \$ 97,422 | 21.3 % | \$ 81,561 | 11.9 % | \$ 44,887 | 12.8 % \$ | 223,870 | 15.0 % | | | | |

| | | Year Ended February 28, 2017 | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|-----------|--------|-----------|-----------|---------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| (In thousands) | Housewa | ires (1) | Health & | Home | Beau | ty | Total | | | | | |
| Operating income, as reported (GAAP) | \$ 89,020 | 21.3 % | \$ 51,072 | 8.1 % | \$ 29,572 | 8.3 % \$ | 169,664 | 12.1 % | | | | |
| Asset impairment charges | - | - % | - | - % | 2,900 | 0.8 % | 2,900 | 0.2 % | | | | |
| Patent litigation charge | - | - % | 1,468 | 0.2 % | - | - % | 1,468 | 0.1_% | | | | |
| Subtotal | 89,020 | 21.3 % | 52,540 | 8.3 % | 32,472 | 9.1 % | 174,032 | 12.4 % | | | | |
| Amortization of intangible assets | 2,643 | 0.6 % | 13,663 | 2.2 % | 5,718 | 1.6 % | 22,024 | 1.6 % | | | | |
| Non-cash share-based compensation | 3,409 | 0.8 % | 5,449 | 0.9 % | 5,003 | 1.4 % | 13,861 | 1.0 % | | | | |
| Adjusted operating income (non-GAAP) | \$ 95,072 | 22.7 % | \$ 71,652 | 11.3 % | \$ 43,193 | 12.1 % \$ | 209,917 | 14.9 % | | | | |

| | Year Ended February 29, 2016 | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|-----------|---------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| (In thousands) | Housew | ares | Health & | y | Total | | | | | | | |
| Operating income, as reported (GAAP) | \$ 55,944 | 18.0 % | \$ 36,860 | 5.7 % | \$ 23,490 | 5.3 % \$ | 116,294 | 8.4 % | | | | |
| Asset impairment charges | - | - % | - | - % | 6,000 | 1.4 % | 6,000 | 0.4 % | | | | |
| CEO succession costs | 1,348 | 0.4 % | 2,722 | 0.4 % | 1,933 | 0.4 % | 6,003 | 0.4 % | | | | |
| Acquisition-related expenses | 698 | 0.2 % | - | - % | - | - % | 698 | 0.1 % | | | | |
| Venezuelan re-measurement related charge (4) | - | - % | - | - % | 18,733 | 4.3 % | 18,733 | 1.3 % | | | | |
| Patent litigation charge | - | - % | 17,830 | 2.8 % | - | - % | 17,830 | 1.3 % | | | | |
| Subtotal | 57,990 | 18.7 % | 57,412 | 8.9 % | 50,156 | 11.4 % | 165,558 | 11.9 % | | | | |
| Amortization of intangible assets | 1,325 | 0.4 % | 14,438 | 2.2 % | 5,751 | 1.3 % | 21,514 | 1.5 % | | | | |
| Non-cash share-based compensation | 1,344 | 0.4 % | 2,470 | 0.4 % | 3,350 | 0.8 % | 7,164 | 0.5 % | | | | |
| Adjusted operating income (non-GAAP) | \$ 60,659 | 19.5 % | \$ 74,320 | 11.6 % | \$ 59,257 | 13.5 % \$ | 194,236 | 13.9 % | | | | |

⁽¹⁾ Fiscal 2017 includes eleven and one-half months of incremental operating results for Hydro Flask, acquired on March 18, 2016. Fiscal 2018 includes a full year of operating results for Hydro Flask.

⁽²⁾ CEO succession costs incurred in connection with the settlement of a lawsuit with our former CEO in fiscal 2016.

Consolidated

Consolidated operating income was \$169.1 million, or 11.3% of net sales, compared to consolidated operating income of \$169.7 million, or 12.1% of net sales, for the same period last year. Fiscal 2018 includes pre-tax non-cash asset impairment charges totaling \$15.4 million, a \$3.6 million charge related to the TRU bankruptcy and pre-tax restructuring charges of \$1.9 million associated with Project Refuel. Fiscal 2017 includes pre-tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$2.9 million and a patent litigation charge of \$1.5 million. The effect of these items in both years unfavorably impacted the year-over-year comparison of operating margin by a combined 1.4 percentage points. The remaining improvement in consolidated operating margin primarily reflects:

- a higher mix of Leadership Brand sales at a higher operating margin;
- improved distribution and logistics efficiency and lower outbound freight costs; and
- the favorable impact that higher overall net sales had on operating leverage.

These factors were partially offset by higher marketing, advertising and new product development expense in support of our Leadership Brands and the unfavorable impact from foreign currency exchange and forward contract settlements.

Consolidated adjusted operating income increased 6.6% to \$223.9 million, or 15.0% of net sales, compared to \$209.9 million, or 14.9% of net sales, in the same period last year.

Housewares

The Housewares segment's operating income was \$89.3 million, or 19.5% of segment net sales, compared to \$89.0 million, or 21.3% of segment net sales, for the same period last year. The 1.8 percentage point decrease in segment operating margin is primarily due to:

- higher marketing, advertising and new product development expense;
- higher promotional spending;
- higher sales in the discount channel;
- a \$1.0 million charge related to the bankruptcy of TRU; and
- a \$0.2 million pre-tax restructuring charge.

These factors were partially offset by the favorable margin impact from growth in the Hydro Flask business, improved distribution and logistics efficiency coupled with lower outbound freight costs, and the impact of increased operating leverage from overall sales growth.

Segment adjusted operating income increased 2.5% to \$97.4 million, or 21.3% of segment net sales, compared to \$95.1 million, or 22.7% of segment net sales, in the same period last year.

Health & Home

The Health & Home segment's operating income was \$62.1 million, or 9.1% of segment net sales, compared to \$51.1 million, or 8.1% of segment net sales, in the same period last year. The 1.0 percentage point increase in segment operating margin is primarily due to:

• lower legal fee expense and the comparative impact of a \$1.5 million patent litigation charge in the same period last year;

- improved distribution and logistics efficiency and lower outbound freight costs;
- lower royalty expense; and
- the favorable impact that higher overall net sales had on operating leverage.

These factors were partially offset by:

- an increase in new product development expense;
- higher personnel and incentive compensation costs;
- a \$2.6 million charge related to the bankruptcy of TRU; and
- an increase in product liability expense.

Segment adjusted operating income increased 13.8% to \$81.6 million, or 11.9% of segment net sales, compared to \$71.7 million, or 11.3% of segment net sales, in the same period last year.

Beauty

The Beauty segment's operating income was \$17.6 million, or 5.1% of segment net sales, compared to operating income of \$29.6 million, or 8.3% of segment net sales, in the same period last year. The 3.2 percentage point decrease in segment operating margin is primarily due to:

- pre-tax non-cash asset impairment charges of \$15.5 million, compared to \$2.9 million recorded in the same period last year;
- pre-tax restructuring charges of \$1.6 million related to Project Refuel; and
- the net sales decline in the personal care category and its unfavorable impact on gross margin mix and operating leverage.

These factors were partially offset by the favorable impact of new product introductions in the appliance category, lower media advertising expense and improved distribution and logistics efficiency coupled with lower outbound freight costs.

Segment adjusted operating income increased 3.9% to \$44.9 million, or 12.8% of segment net sales, compared to \$43.2 million, or 12.1% of segment net sales, in the same period last year.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was \$14.0 million in fiscal 2018 compared to \$14.4 million in fiscal 2017. The decrease in interest expense is due to lower average levels of debt held during the twelve months ended February 28, 2018, partially offset by higher overall average interest rates.

Income Tax Expense

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") was enacted into law. Among other changes, the Tax Act lowered the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% and established a modified territorial system requiring a mandatory deemed repatriation tax on undistributed earnings of

Table of Contents

foreign subsidiaries. The rate change is effective at the beginning of calendar year 2018 and, as a result, we have a blended U.S. federal statutory tax rate of 32.7% for our fiscal year 2018.

As a result of the enactment, we have recorded a provisional tax charge of \$17.9 million related to the one-time remeasurement of our U.S. deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse in the future, the one-time repatriation tax applied to our undistributed foreign earnings and the impact of executive compensation that is no longer deductible under the Tax Act. The ultimate impact may differ from this provisional amount due to additional analysis, changes in interpretations or assumptions we have made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued and actions that we may take as a result of the Tax Act. Any subsequent adjustments to provisional estimates will be reflected in our income tax provision during one or more periods in fiscal 2019.

The year-over-year comparison of our effective tax rates is impacted by the mix of taxable income in our various tax jurisdictions, among other factors. Due to our organization in Bermuda and the ownership structure of our foreign subsidiaries, many of which are not owned directly or indirectly by a U.S. parent company, an immaterial amount of our foreign income is subject to U.S. taxation on a permanent basis under current law. Additionally, our intellectual property is largely owned by our foreign subsidiaries, resulting in proportionally higher earnings in jurisdictions with lower statutory tax rates, which decreases our overall effective tax rate.

Fiscal 2018 income tax expense as a percentage of income before tax was 17.1% compared to 7.3% in the same period last year. The increase in our effective tax rate was primarily due to the provisional charge of \$17.9 million related to the Tax Act, which increased our effective tax rate by 11.5 percentage points. This impact was partially offset by:

- \$2.1 million in tax benefits resulting from the recognition of excess tax benefits from share-based compensation in income tax expense rather than paid in capital due to our adoption of ASU 2016-09; and
- \$2.4 million in tax benefits related to the resolution of uncertain tax positions.

Income from continuing operations, diluted EPS from continuing operations, adjusted Income from continuing operations (non-GAAP), and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations (non-GAAP)

In order to provide a better understanding of the impact of certain items on our income and EPS from continuing operations, the analysis that follows reports the comparative after tax impact of non - cash

asset impairment charges, CEO succession costs, acquisition - related expenses, tax reform, Venezuelan currency re-measurement related charges, patent litigation charges, the TRU bankruptcy charge, amortization of intangible assets, and non - cash share - based compensation, as applicable, on income

from continuing operations, and basic and diluted EPS from continuing operations for the periods covered below.

| | Year Ended February 28, 2018 | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------|-----|--------------|------------|---------|-------------------|-----------|------|--------|----|----------|--|--|
| | Income | Fro | n Continuing | | Diluted | Ea | rnings Pe | r Sh | are | | | | |
| (in thousands, except per share data) | Before Tax | (| Tax | Net of Tax | | Before Tax | | | Tax | Ne | t of Tax | | |
| As reported (GAAP) | \$ 155,438 | \$ | 26,556 | \$ | 128,882 | \$ | 5.70 | \$ | 0.97 | \$ | 4.73 | | |
| Tax reform | - | | (17,939) | | 17,939 | | - | | (0.66) | | 0.66 | | |
| Asset impairment charges | 15,447 | | 1,613 | | 13,834 | | 0.57 | | 0.06 | | 0.51 | | |
| Restructuring charges | 1,857 | | 69 | | 1,788 | | 0.07 | | - | | 0.07 | | |
| TRU bankruptcy charge | 3,596 | | 204 | | 3,392 | | 0.13 | | 0.01 | | 0.12 | | |
| Subtotal | 176,338 | | 10,503 | | 165,835 | | 6.47 | | 0.39 | | 6.08 | | |
| Amortization of intangible assets | 18,854 | | 850 | | 18,004 | | 0.69 | | 0.03 | | 0.66 | | |
| Non-cash share-based compensation | 15,054 | | 1,669 | | 13,385 | | 0.55 | | 0.06 | | 0.49 | | |
| Adjusted (non-GAAP) | \$ 210,246 | \$ | 13,022 | \$ | 197,224 | \$ | 7.71 | \$ | 0.48 | \$ | 7.24 | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Weighted average shares of common stock used in computing diluted earnings per share | | | | | | | | | | | 27,254 | | |

| | Year Ended February 28, 2017 | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----|------------|----------------------------|------------|----|--------|----|------|-----|--------|--|--|--|
| | Income F | rom | Continuing | Diluted Earnings Per Share | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | Before | | | | | | | |
| (in thousands, except per share data) | Before Tax | | Tax | N | let of Tax | | Tax | | Tax | Net | of Tax | | | |
| As reported (GAAP) | \$ 155,717 | \$ | 11,407 | \$ | 144,310 | \$ | 5.58 | \$ | 0.41 | \$ | 5.17 | | | |
| Asset impairment charges | 2,900 | | 354 | | 2,546 | | 0.10 | | 0.01 | | 0.09 | | | |
| Patent litigation charge | 1,468 | | 4 | | 1,464 | | 0.05 | | - | | 0.05 | | | |
| Subtotal | 160,085 | | 11,765 | | 148,320 | | 5.74 | | 0.42 | | 5.32 | | | |
| Amortization of intangible assets | 22,024 | | 1,538 | | 20,486 | | 0.79 | | 0.06 | | 0.73 | | | |
| Non-cash share-based compensation | 13,861 | | 1,762 | | 12,099 | | 0.50 | | 0.06 | | 0.44 | | | |
| Adjusted (non-GAAP) | \$ 195,970 | \$ | 15,065 | \$ | 180,905 | \$ | 7.03 | \$ | 0.54 | \$ | 6.49 | | | |

| Weighted average shares of common stock used in computing diluted earnings per share | 27,891 |
|--|--------|
| | |
| Year Ended February 29, 2016 | |

| | Year Ended February 29, 2016 | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|------------------------------|----------------|------------|------------|-------------|------------|--|--|--|--|--|--|
| | Income F | rom Continuino | Operations | Diluted | Earnings Pe | er Share | | | | | | |
| (in thousands, except per share data) | Before Tax | Tax | Net of Tax | Before Tax | Tax | Net of Tax | | | | | | |
| As reported (GAAP) | \$ 106,013 | \$ 13,021 | \$ 92,992 | \$ 3.69 | \$ 0.45 | \$ 3.23 | | | | | | |
| Asset impairment charges | 6,000 | 688 | 5,312 | 0.21 | 0.02 | 0.18 | | | | | | |
| CEO succession costs | 6,003 | 2,062 | 3,941 | 0.21 | 0.07 | 0.14 | | | | | | |
| Acquisition-related expenses | 698 | 2 | 696 | 0.02 | - | 0.02 | | | | | | |
| Venezuelan re-measurement related charges | 18,733 | - | 18,733 | 0.65 | - | 0.65 | | | | | | |
| Patent litigation charge | 17,830 | 45 | 17,785 | 0.62 | - | 0.62 | | | | | | |
| Subtotal | 155,277 | 15,818 | 139,459 | 5.40 | 0.55 | 4.85 | | | | | | |
| Amortization of intangible assets | 21,514 | 1,187 | 20,327 | 0.75 | 0.04 | 0.71 | | | | | | |

| Non-cash share-based compensation | 7,164 | 753 | 6,411 | 0.25 | 0.03 | 0.22 |
|---|--------------------------|----------------|------------|---------|---------|--------|
| Adjusted (non-GAAP) | \$ 183,955 \$ | 17,758 \$ | 166,197 \$ | 6.40 \$ | 0.62 \$ | 5.78 |
| | | | | | | |
| Weighted average shares of common stock u | ised in computing dilute | ed earnings pe | r share | | | 28,749 |

Our income from continuing operations was \$128.9 million for fiscal 2018 compared to \$144.3 million for fiscal 2017, a decrease of 10.7%. Our diluted earnings per share from continuing operations decreased \$0.44 or 8.5%, to \$4.73 for fiscal 2018 compared to \$5.17 for fiscal 2017.

Adjusted income from continuing operations increased \$16.3 million, or 9.0%, for fiscal 2018 compared to fiscal 2017. Adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations was \$7.24 for fiscal 2018 compared to \$6.49 for fiscal 2017. The increase in adjusted income was primarily due to an increase in adjusted operating income and lower interest expense. The increase in adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations was due to increased adjusted income and lower diluted shares outstanding during fiscal 2018.

The tables contained in this MD&A, under the headings "Operating income, operating margin, adjusted operating income (non-GAAP) and adjusted operating margin (non-GAAP) by segment" and "Income from continuing operations, diluted EPS from continuing operations, adjusted income from continuing operations (non-GAAP), and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations (non-GAAP)," respectively, report operating income, operating margin, income from continuing operations and diluted earnings per share from continuing operations without the impact of non-cash asset impairment charges, CEO succession costs, acquisition-related expenses, tax reform, Venezuelan currency re-measurement related charges, patent litigation charges, amortization of intangible assets, and non-cash share-based compensation for the periods presented, as applicable. These measures may be considered non-GAAP financial information as set forth in SEC Regulation G. Rule 100. The preceding table and the table on page 34 reconciles these measures to their corresponding GAAP-based measures presented in our consolidated statements of income. We believe that adjusted operating income, adjusted operating margin, adjusted income from continuing operations and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations provide useful information to management and investors regarding financial and business trends relating to our financial condition and results of operations. We believe that these non-GAAP financial measures. in combination with the our financial results calculated in accordance with GAAP, provide investors with additional perspective regarding the impact of such charges on net income and earnings per share. We also believe that these non-GAAP measures facilitate a more direct comparison of our performance to our competitors. We further believe that including the excluded charges would not accurately reflect the underlying performance of the our continuing operations for the period in which the charges are incurred. even though such charges may be incurred and reflected in the our GAAP financial results in the near future. The material limitation associated with the use of the non-GAAP financial measures is that the non-GAAP measures do not reflect the full economic impact of our activities. Our adjusted operating income, adjusted operating margin, adjusted income from continuing operations and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations are not prepared in accordance with GAAP, are not an alternative to GAAP financial information and may be calculated differently than non-GAAP financial information disclosed by other companies. Accordingly, undue reliance should not be placed on non-GAAP information.

Comparison of Fiscal 2017 to Fiscal 2016

Consolidated and Segment Net Sales

The following table summarizes the impact that acquisitions and foreign currency had on our net sales revenue by segment:

| | Year Ended February 28, 2017 | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|----|-----------------|--------|----------|--------|-----------|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | Ho | usewares (1) | He | alth & Home (2) | | Beauty | Total | | | | |
| Fiscal 2016 sales revenue, net | \$ | 310,663 | \$ | 642,735 | \$ | 439,177 | \$ | 1,392,575 | | | |
| Core business | | 2,402 | | (8,257) | | (56,853) | | (62,708) | | | |
| Impact of foreign currency | | (1,942) | | (2,421) | | (5,339) | | (9,702) | | | |
| Venezuela re-measurement | | - | | - | | (21,206) | | (21,206) | | | |
| Acquisitions | | 107,005 | | 712 | | - | | 107,717 | | | |
| Change in sales revenue, net | | 107,465 | | (9,966) | | (83,398) | | 14,101 | | | |
| Fiscal 2017 sales revenue, net | \$ | 418,128 | \$ | 632,769 | \$ | 355,779 | \$ | 1,406,676 | | | |
| Total net sales revenue growth | | 34.6 % | | (1.6)% | (1.6)% | | , 0 | 1.0 % | | | |
| Core business | | 0.8 % | | (1.3)% | · | (12.9)% | , 0 | (4.5)% | | | |
| Impact of foreign currency | | (0.6)% | | (0.4)% | D | (1.2)% | | (0.7)% | | | |
| Venezuela re-measurement | | - % | | - % | (4.8)% | | | (1.5)% | | | |
| Acquisitions | | 34.4 % | | 0.1 % | | - % | 0 | 7.7 % | | | |

- (1) Fiscal 2017 growth from acquisitions includes eleven and one-half months of incremental operating results for the Hydro Flask acquisition, acquired on March 18, 2016.
- (2) Fiscal 2017 growth from acquisitions includes one month of incremental operating results for the Vicks Vaposteam inhalant business acquisition, acquired on March 31, 2015.

In the above table core business refers to our net sales revenue associated with product lines or brands after the first twelve months from the date the product line or brand is acquired, excluding the impact that foreign currency and Venezuelan currency re-measurement had on reported net sales. Net sales revenue from internally developed brands or product lines is considered core business activity.

Consolidated Net Sales Revenue

Consolidated net sales revenue increased \$14.1 million, or 1.0%, to \$1,406.7 million for fiscal 2017, compared to \$1,392.6 million for fiscal 2016. The increase was primarily driven by growth from acquisitions of \$107.7 million, or 7.7%, and was partially offset by the following:

- a core business decline of \$62.7 million, or 4.5%, primarily due to:
 - a decrease of approximately \$39.6 million, or 2.8%, from our rationalization of lower margin, commoditized and non-strategic business;
 - the unfavorable impact of a weak cough/cold/flu season that was both below average and below that of the same period last year;
 - the impact of lower store traffic and soft consumer spending at traditional brick and mortar retail along with the impact of inventory rationalization by several key retailers;
- an unfavorable impact of \$21.2 million, or 1.5%, from the discontinued use of the official exchange rate and the adoption of a market-based exchange rate to re-measure our Venezuelan financial statements in fiscal 2017; and
- the unfavorable impact from foreign currency fluctuations of approximately \$9.7 million, or 0.7%.

Segment Net Sales Revenue

Housewares

Net sales revenue in the Housewares segment increased \$107.5 million, or 34.6%, to \$418.1 million for fiscal 2017, compared to \$310.7 million for fiscal 2016. The increase was driven by:

- growth from acquisitions of \$107.0 million, or 34.4%, representing eleven and one-half months of operating results for Hydro Flask; and
- core business growth of \$2.4 million, or 0.8%, primarily due to growth in online sales at key
 customers and new product and category introductions, partially offset by lower order
 replenishment from key customers due to lower retail store traffic and the unfavorable comparative
 impact from the launch of the kitchen electrics category in fiscal 2016.

These factors were partially offset by the unfavorable impact of net foreign currency fluctuations of approximately \$1.9 million, or 0.6%.

Health & Home

Net sales revenue in the Health & Home segment decreased \$10.0 million, or 1.6%, to \$632.8 million for fiscal 2017, compared to \$642.7 million for fiscal 2016. The decrease was driven by:

- a core business decline of \$8.3 million, or 1.3%, primarily due to a de-emphasis of low margin hot/cold therapy business and the impact of another weak cough/cold/flu season on thermometry and humidification replenishment orders, partially offset by growth in air purification and our seasonal fan and heater categories; and
- the unfavorable impact of net foreign currency fluctuations of approximately \$2.4 million, or 0.4%.

These factors were partially offset by growth from acquisitions of \$0.7 million, or 0.1%, representing twelve months of contribution from Vicks VapoSteam, compared to eleven months of contribution for fiscal 2016.

Beauty

Net sales revenue in the Beauty segment decreased \$83.4 million, or 19.0%, to \$355.8 million for fiscal 2017, compared to \$439.2 million for fiscal 2016. The decrease was driven by:

- a core business decline of \$56.9 million, or 12.9%, primarily due to our rationalization of lower margin, commoditized and non-strategic business and the impact of lower store traffic and soft consumer spending at traditional brick and mortar retail, along with inventory rationalization by several key retailers;
- the unfavorable impact of net foreign currency fluctuations of approximately \$5.3 million, or 1.2%;
- an unfavorable impact of \$21.2 million, or 4.8%, from our discontinued use of the official exchange rate and our adoption of a market-based exchange rate to re-measure our Venezuelan financial statements in fiscal 2017.

Gross Profit Margin

Consolidated gross profit margin for fiscal 2017 increased 3.6 percentage points to 41.4%, compared to 37.8% for fiscal 2016. The increase in consolidated gross profit margin is primarily due to:

- favorable shifts in product mix;
- product rationalization efforts:
- the impact of a Venezuela inventory impairment charge of \$9.1 million recorded in fiscal 2016,
 which reduced the comparative period consolidated gross profit margin by 0.6 percentage points;
- accretion from the Hydro Flask acquisition, which increased consolidated gross profit margin by
 1.6 percentage points; and
- reductions in product costs.

These factors were partially offset by the unfavorable impact of net foreign currency fluctuations.

Selling General and Administrative Expense

Our consolidated SG&A ratio increased 0.1 percentage point to 29.1% for fiscal 2017, compared to 29.0% for fiscal 2016. The increase in consolidated SG&A ratio is primarily due to:

- the impact of higher compensation costs due to hourly wage increases, increases in share-based compensation as new three-year performance based incentives entered their third year of existence and estimated performance factors were adjusted, and the \$1.8 million unfavorable impact of a change in an accounting standard for share-based compensation;
- higher advertising expense;
- patent litigation expense of \$1.5 million; and
- the impact within our core business that lower overall net sales had on operating leverage.

These factors were mostly offset by:

- improved distribution and logistics efficiency and lower outbound freight costs within our core business;
- lower year-over-year foreign currency exchange losses, partially due to cash flow hedges and \$10 million of U.S. Dollar to Euro cross-currency debt swaps; and
- the favorable comparative impact of the following items recorded in fiscal 2016:
 - a \$17.8 million patent litigation charge;
 - Venezuela re-measurement related charges of \$9.6 million; and
 - \$6.0 million of CEO succession costs recorded as result of the lawsuit settlement with our former CEO.

Asset Impairment charges

Fiscal 2017

As a result of our interim and annual testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges of \$2.9 million (\$2.5 million after tax) in continuing operations. The charges were related to certain trademarks in our Beauty segment.

Fiscal 2016

As a result of our testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges of \$6.0 million (\$5.3 million after tax) in continuing operations. These charges were related to certain trademarks in our Beauty segment.

Operating income, operating margin, adjusted operating income (non-GAAP), and adjusted operating margin (non-GAAP) by segment

Adjusted operating income and adjusted operating margin may be considered non-GAAP financial measures as set forth in SEC Regulation G, Rule 100. A reconciliation and explanation of the reasons why we believe the non-GAAP financial information is useful and the nature and limitations of the non-GAAP financial measures is furnished in this MD&A on pages 34, 38 and 39.

Consolidated

Consolidated operating income increased 45.9% to \$169.7 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$116.3 million for fiscal 2016. Consolidated operating margin was 12.1% in fiscal 2017 compared to 8.4% in fiscal 2016. The increase was driven by:

- accretion from the acquisition of Hydro Flask;
- the rationalization of low-margin business and lower product costs; and
- the favorable comparative impact of the following items recorded in fiscal 2016:
 - o a \$17.8 million patent litigation charge;
 - Venezuela re-measurement related charges of \$9.6 million; and
 - \$6.0 million of CEO succession costs recorded as result of the lawsuit settlement with our former CEO.

These factors were partially offset by:

- the unfavorable impact from foreign currency;
- higher compensation expense; and
- higher advertising expense.

Consolidated adjusted operating income was \$209.9 million, or 14.9% of net sales, compared to \$194.2 million, or 13.9% of net sales for fiscal 2016.

Housewares

The Housewares segment's operating income increased \$33.1 million, or 59.2%, to \$89.0 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$55.9 million for fiscal 2016. The increase was driven by:

- the accretive impact of the Hydro Flask acquisition, which increased the segment operating margin by 2.9 percentage points;
- core business improvements in inbound freight costs; and
- product cost savings and channel mix.

These factors were partially offset by:

- higher incentive compensation costs;
- increased media advertising expense; and
- the unfavorable impact of foreign currency fluctuations.

Segment adjusted operating income increased 56.7% to \$95.1 million, or 22.7% of segment net sales, compared to \$60.7 million, or 19.5% of segment net sales, in fiscal 2016.

Health & Home

The Health & Home segment's operating income increased \$14.2 million, or 38.6%, to \$51.1 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$36.9 million for fiscal 2016. The increase was driven by the year over year decrease in patent litigation charges of \$16.4 million and CEO succession costs of \$2.7 million included in fiscal 2016. The remaining decrease of \$4.9 million was driven by:

- an increase in media advertising to support new product introductions and drive category awareness; and
- the unfavorable impact of foreign currency fluctuations.

These factors were partially offset by a year-over-year increase in gross profit margin driven by lower product costs and favorable product/customer mix.

Segment adjusted operating income decreased 3.6% to \$71.7 million, or 11.3% of segment net sales, compared to \$74.3 million, or 11.6% of segment net sales, in fiscal 2016.

Beauty

The Beauty segment's operating income increased \$6.1 million, or 25.9%, to \$29.6 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$23.5 million for fiscal 2016. The increase was driven by the year over year decrease in asset impairment charges of \$3.1 million, and Venezuelan remeasurement related charges and CEO succession costs totaling \$20.6 million in fiscal 2016. The remaining decrease of \$17.6 million was driven by:

- the impact of a change in the rate used to re-measure our Venezuelan financial statements during fiscal 2017, which had a comparative unfavorable impact on operating income of approximately \$8.4 million;
- unfavorable foreign currency fluctuations; and

net sales declines and their unfavorable impact on operating leverage.

These factors were partially offset by:

- reduced product costs;
- a higher margin sales mix, and
- lower incentive compensation expense.

Segment adjusted operating income decreased 27.1% to \$43.2 million, or 12.1% of segment net sales, compared to \$59.3 million, or 13.5% of segment net sales, in fiscal 2016.

Interest Expense

Interest expense was \$14.4 million in fiscal 2017 compared to \$10.6 million in fiscal 2016. The increase in interest expense is due to:

- higher levels of debt as a result of borrowings used to fund the repurchase of \$75.0 million of our outstanding common stock and the \$210.0 million acquisition of Hydro Flask in fiscal 2017; and
- higher average interest rates in fiscal 2017 compared to fiscal 2016.

Income Tax Expense

Our fiscal 2017 income tax expense was \$11.4 million and our effective tax rate was 7.3%, compared to \$13.0 million and 12.3%, respectively, in fiscal 2016. The year-over-year comparison of our effective tax rates was impacted by the mix of taxable income in our various tax jurisdictions. Due to our organization in Bermuda and the ownership structure of our foreign subsidiaries, many of which are not owned directly or indirectly by a U.S. parent company, an immaterial amount of our foreign income is subject to U.S. taxation on a permanent basis under current law. Additionally, our intellectual property is largely owned by our foreign subsidiaries, resulting in proportionally higher earnings in jurisdictions with lower statutory tax rates, which decreases our overall effective tax rate.

The fiscal 2017 effective tax rate was also favorably impacted by:

- \$1.8 million in tax benefits resulting from the recognition of excess tax benefits from share-based compensation in income tax expense rather than paid in capital due to our adoption of ASU 2016-09;
- \$1.6 million in tax benefits related to the resolution of uncertain tax positions; and
- tax benefits of \$1.5 million in due to the finalization of certain tax returns.

Income from continuing operations, diluted EPS from continuing operations, adjusted Income from continuing operations (non-GAAP), and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations (non-GAAP)

Adjusted income from continuing operations and adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations may be considered non-GAAP financial measures as set forth in SEC Regulation G, Rule 100. A reconciliation and explanation of the reasons why we believe the non-GAAP financial information is

Table of Contents

useful and the nature and limitations of the non-GAAP financial measures is furnished in this MD&A on pages 38 and 39.

Our income from continuing operations was \$144.3 million for fiscal 2017 compared to \$93.0 million for fiscal 2016, an increase of 55.2%. Our diluted EPS from continuing operations increased \$1.94, or 60.1%, to \$5.17 for fiscal 2017 compared to \$3.23 for fiscal 2016.

Adjusted income from continuing operations increased \$14.7 million, or 8.8%, for fiscal 2017 compared to fiscal 2016. Adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations was \$6.49 for fiscal 2017 compared to \$5.78 for fiscal 2016. The increase in adjusted income from continuing operations was primarily due to an increase in adjusted operating income and lower tax expense, partially offset by higher interest expense. The increase in adjusted diluted EPS from continuing operations was due to increased adjusted income and lower diluted shares outstanding during fiscal 2017.

Financial Condition, Liquidity and Capital Resources

Selected measures of our liquidity and capital utilization for fiscal 2018 and 2017 are shown below:

| | I | Fiscal Years Ended th | e Last Da | y of February, |
|---|----|-----------------------|-----------|----------------|
| | | 2018 | | 2017 |
| Accounts Receivable Turnover (Days) (1) | | 61.3 | | 60.4 |
| Inventory Turnover (Times) (1) | | 3.0 | | 2.8 |
| Working Capital (in thousands) | \$ | 258,222 | \$ | 267,897 |
| Current Ratio | | 1.9:1 | | 2.0:1 |
| Ending Debt to Ending Equity Ratio | | 28.6 % | | 47.6 % |
| Return on Average Equity (1) | | 12.7 % | | 14.8 % |

(1) Accounts receivable turnover, inventory turnover and return on average equity computations use 12 month trailing net sales revenue, cost of goods sold or income from continuing operations components as required by the particular measure. The current and four prior quarters' ending balances of accounts receivable, inventory and equity are used for the purposes of computing the average balance component as required by the particular measure.

Operating Activities:

Comparison of Fiscal 2018 to Fiscal 2017

Operating activities from continuing operations provided \$218.6 million of cash during fiscal 2018 compared to \$212.5 million during fiscal 2017. The increase was driven primarily by net favorable fluctuations in inventory, accounts payable and accrued expenses, as well as higher non-cash charges during fiscal 2018 compared to fiscal 2017.

Accounts receivable increased \$43.8 million to \$273.2 million at the end of fiscal 2018, compared to \$229.4 million at the end of fiscal 2017. Accounts receivable turnover increased to 61.3 days from 60.4 days in fiscal 2017.

Inventory decreased \$29.4 million to \$251.5 million at the end of fiscal 2018, compared to \$280.9 million at the end of fiscal 2017. Inventory turnover was 3.0 times for fiscal 2018 compared to 2.8 times for fiscal 2017.

Working capital was \$258.2 million at the end of fiscal 2018, compared to \$267.9 million at the end of fiscal 2017. The decrease in working capital was primarily due to a decrease in inventory and increases in accounts payable and accrued expenses.

Comparison of Fiscal 2017 to Fiscal 2016

Operating activities from continuing operations provided \$212.5 million of cash during fiscal 2017 compared to \$170.3 million of cash provided during fiscal 2016. The increase was driven primarily by the increase in income from continuing operations and net favorable changes in working capital components during fiscal 2017 compared to fiscal 2016.

Accounts receivable increased \$12.2 million to \$229.4 million at the end of fiscal 2017, compared to \$217.2 million at the end of fiscal 2016. Accounts receivable turnover decreased to 60.4 days from 60.6 days in fiscal 2016.

Inventory decreased \$10.7 million to \$280.9 million at the end of fiscal 2017, compared to \$291.6 million at the end of fiscal 2016. Inventory as of February 28, 2017 includes \$25.0 million from the Hydro Flask acquisition. Inventory turnover was 2.8 times for both fiscal 2017 and 2016.

Working capital was \$267.9 million at the end of fiscal 2017, compared to \$504.3 million at the end of fiscal 2016. The decrease in working capital was due to the use of \$210.0 million in cash held at the end of fiscal 2016 to fund the Hydro Flask acquisition in March 2016.

Investing Activities:

Investing activities from continuing operations used cash of \$13.6, \$224.7, and \$59.8 million in fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Highlights from Fiscal 2018

we spent \$0.1 million on building improvements, \$7.5 million on computers, furniture, software
enhancements, and other equipment, \$4.8 million on tooling and production equipment and \$1.2
million on the development of new patents.

Highlights from Fiscal 2017

- we spent \$0.6 million on building and improvements, \$9.2 million on computers, software implementations and enhancements, furniture and other equipment, \$5.5 million on tools, molds and other capital asset additions, and \$1.0 million on the development of new patents; and
- we paid \$209.3 million to acquire Hydro Flask.

Highlights from Fiscal 2016

- we spent \$6.4 million on building and improvements, \$9.4 million on computers, software implementations and enhancements, \$2.5 million on tools, molds and other capital asset additions and \$1.1 million on the development of new patents; and
- we paid \$43.2 million to acquire the Vicks VapoSteam inhalant business in the Health & Home segment.

Financing Activities:

Financing activities used cash of \$262.2 and \$201.4 million in fiscal 2018 and 2017, respectively, and provided cash of \$90.7 million in fiscal 2016.

Highlights from Fiscal 2018

- we had draws of \$521.2 million against our Credit Agreement;
- we repaid \$692.5 million drawn against our Credit Agreement;
- we repaid \$25.7 million of long-term debt; and
- we repurchased and retired 793,085 shares of common stock at an average price of \$92.13 per share for a total purchase price of \$73.1 million through a combination of the settlement of certain stock awards and open market purchases.

Highlights from Fiscal 2017

- we had draws of \$470.9 million against our Credit Agreement;
- we repaid \$580.3 million drawn against our Credit Agreement;

- we repaid \$23.8 million of long-term debt; and
- we repurchased and retired 929,017 shares of common stock at an average price of \$81.37 per share for a total purchase price of \$75.6 million through a combination of the settlement of certain stock awards and open market purchases.

Highlights from Fiscal 2016

- we had draws of \$802.6 million against our Credit Agreement, including \$210 million drawn shortly before fiscal year end to facilitate the closing of the Hydro Flask acquisition in March 2016;
- we repaid \$590.0 million drawn against our Credit Agreement;
- we repaid \$21.9 million of long-term debt;
- we issued 276,548 shares of common stock as payment for \$15 million in separation compensation due to our former CEO, and he tendered back 116,012 shares as payment for \$12 million in related federal income tax withholding obligations; and
- we repurchased and retired 1,244,090 shares of common stock at an average price of \$85.53 per share for a total purchase price of \$106.4 million through a combination of the settlement of certain stock awards and open market purchases.

Discontinued Operations:

Operating activities from discontinued operations provided cash of \$5.6, \$16.0 and \$16.3 million for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Cash provided (used) by discontinued operations for investing activities was \$49.2, (\$5.1) and (\$3.9) million for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Credit Agreement and Other Debt Agreements

Credit Agreement

We have a credit agreement (the "Credit Agreement") with Bank of America, N.A., as administrative agent, and other lenders that provides for an unsecured total revolving commitment of \$1 billion as of February 28, 2018. The commitment under the Credit Agreement terminates on December 7, 2021. Borrowings accrue interest under one of two alternative methods as described in the Credit Agreement. With each borrowing against our credit line, we can elect the interest rate method based on our funding needs at the time. We also incur loan commitment and letter of credit fees under the Credit Agreement. Outstanding letters of credit reduce the borrowing availability under the Credit Agreement on a dollar-for-dollar basis. As of February 28, 2018, the outstanding revolving loan principal balance was \$269.4 million and the balance of outstanding letters of credit was \$7.1 million. As of February 28, 2018, the amount available for borrowings under the Credit Agreement was \$723.5 million. Covenants in our debt agreements limit the amount of total indebtedness we can incur. As of February 28, 2018, these covenants effectively limited our ability to incur more than \$516.9 million of additional debt from all sources, including our Credit Agreement, or \$692.1 million in the event a qualified acquisition is consummated.

Other Debt Agreements

We have an aggregate principal balance of approximately \$24.3 million under a loan agreement with the Mississippi Business Finance Corporation (the "MBFC Loan"). The borrowings were used to fund

Table of Contents

construction of our Olive Branch, Mississippi distribution facility. The remaining loan balance is payable as follows: \$1.9 million on March 1, 2018 through 2022; and \$14.8 million on March 1, 2023. Any remaining outstanding principal and interest is due upon maturity on March 1, 2023.

All of our debt is unconditionally guaranteed, on a joint and several basis, by the Company and certain of its subsidiaries. Our debt agreements require the maintenance of certain key financial covenants, defined in the table below. Our debt agreements also contain other customary covenants, including, among other things, covenants restricting or limiting us, except under certain conditions set forth therein, from (1) incurring debt, (2) incurring liens on its properties, (3) making certain types of investments, (4) selling certain assets or making other fundamental changes relating to mergers and consolidations, and (5) repurchasing shares of our common stock and paying dividends. Our debt agreements also contain customary events of default, including failure to pay principal or interest when due, among others. Our debt agreements are cross-defaulted to each other. Upon an event of default under our debt agreements, the holders or lenders may, among other things, accelerate the maturity of any amounts outstanding under our debt agreements. The commitments of the lenders to make loans to us under the Credit Agreement are several and not joint. Accordingly, if any lender fails to make loans to us, our available liquidity could be reduced by an amount up to the aggregate amount of such lender's commitments under the Credit Agreement.

Table of Contents

The table below provides the formulas currently in effect under various provisions contained in certain key financial covenants under our debt agreements:

| Applicable Financial Covenant | Credit Agreement and MBFC Loan |
|--------------------------------|---|
| Minimum Consolidated Net Worth | None |
| Interest Coverage Ratio | EBIT ⁽²⁾ ÷ Interest Expense ⁽²⁾ |
| | Minimum Required: 3.00 to 1.00 |
| Maximum Leverage Ratio | Total Current and Long Term Debt (3) ÷ [EBITDA (2) + Pro Forma Effect of Acquisitions] |
| | Maximum Currently Allowed: 3.50 to 1.00 |

EBIT: Earnings Before Non-Cash Charges, Interest Expense and Taxes

EBITDA: EBIT + Depreciation and Amortization Expense + Share Based

Compensation

Total Capitalization: Total Current and Long Term Debt + Total Equity

Pro Forma Effect of Acquisitions: For any acquisition, pre-acquisition EBITDA of the acquired business is

included so that the EBITDA of the acquired business included in the

computation equals its twelve month trailing total.

Notes:

- (1) Excluding any fiscal quarter net losses.
- (2) Computed using totals for the latest reported four consecutive fiscal quarters.
- (3) Computed using the ending balances as of the latest reported fiscal quarter.

Contractual Obligations

Our contractual obligations and commercial commitments in effect as of the end of fiscal 2018 were:

| (in thousands) | Total | 2019 1 year | - | 2020 2 years | 2021 3 years | 2022 4 years | 2023 5 years | After vears |
|------------------------------------|---------------|----------------|----|-----------------|---------------------|-----------------|-----------------|--------------|
| Floating rate debt | \$ 293,707 | \$ 1,900 | \$ | 1,900 | \$ 1,900 | 271,300 | \$ 1,900 | \$ 14,807 |
| Long-term incentive plan | | | | | | | | |
| payouts | 11,840 | 5,412 | | 4,786 | 1,642 | - | - | - |
| Interest on floating rate debt (1) | 29,011 | 7,625 | | 7,569 | 7,514 | 5,873 | 429 | 1 |
| Open purchase orders | 182,603 | 182,603 | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Long-term purchase | | | | | | | | |
| commitments | 1,033 | 1,033 | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Minimum royalty payments | 55,359 | 12,490 | | 12,972 | 12,912 | 9,071 | 7,914 | - |
| Advertising and promotional | 39,071 | 14,304 | | 6,298 | 6,411 | 6,527 | 5,531 | - |
| Operating leases | 67,685 | 6,237 | | 6,270 | 6,278 | 5,851 | 4,932 | 38,117 |
| Capital spending commitments | 1,080 | 1,080 | | - | - | - | - | - |
| Total contractual obligations (2) | \$ 681,389 | \$ 232,684 | \$ | 39,795 | \$ 36,657 | \$ 298,622 | \$ 20,706 | \$ 52,925 |

- (1) We estimate our future obligations for interest on our floating rate debt by assuming the weighted average interest rates in effect on each floating rate debt obligation at February 28, 2018 remain constant into the future. This is an estimate, as actual rates will vary over time. In addition, for the Credit Agreement, we assume that the balance outstanding as of February 28, 2018 remains the same for the remaining term of the agreement. The actual balance outstanding under the Credit Agreement may fluctuate significantly in future periods, depending on the availability of cash flow from operations and future investing and financing considerations.
- (2) In addition to the contractual obligations and commercial commitments in the table above, as of February 28, 2018, we have recorded a provision for uncertain tax positions of \$4.4 million. We are unable to reliably estimate the timing of most of the future payments, if any, related to uncertain tax positions; therefore, we have excluded these tax liabilities from the table above.

Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements

We have no existing activities involving special purpose entities or off-balance sheet financing.

Current and Future Capital Needs

Based on our current financial condition and current operations, we believe that cash flows from operations and available financing sources will continue to provide sufficient capital resources to fund our foreseeable short- and long-term liquidity requirements. We expect our capital needs to stem primarily from the need to purchase sufficient levels of inventory and to carry normal levels of accounts receivable on our balance sheet. In addition, we continue to evaluate acquisition opportunities on a regular basis. We may finance acquisition activity with available cash, the issuance of shares of common stock, additional debt, or other sources of financing, depending upon the size and nature of any such transaction and the status of the capital markets at the time of such acquisition. We may also elect to repurchase additional shares of common stock up to the balance of our current authorization over the next fiscal year, subject to limitations contained in our debt agreements and based upon our assessment of a number of factors, including share price, trading volume and general market conditions, working capital requirements, general business conditions, financial conditions, any applicable contractual limitations, and other factors, including alternative investment opportunities. For additional information, see Part II, Item 5., "Market for Registrant's Common Equity, Related Shareholder Matters and Issuer Purchases of Equity Securities" in this report. As of February 28, 2018, the amount of cash and cash equivalents held by our foreign subsidiaries was \$17.2 million, of which, an immaterial amount was held in foreign countries where the funds may not be readily convertible into other currencies.

Critical Accounting Policies and Estimates

The SEC defines critical accounting policies as those that are both most important to the portrayal of a company's financial condition and results, and require management's most difficult, subjective or complex judgments, often as a result of the need to make estimates about the effect of matters that are inherently uncertain. We consider the following policies to meet this definition.

Income Taxes

We must make certain estimates and judgments in determining income tax expense for financial statement purposes. These estimates and judgments must be used in the calculation of certain tax assets and liabilities because of differences in the timing of recognition of revenue and expense for tax and financial statement purposes. We must assess the likelihood that we will be able to recover our deferred tax assets. If recovery is not likely, we must increase our provision for taxes by recording a valuation allowance against the deferred tax assets that we estimate will not ultimately be recoverable. As changes occur in our assessments regarding our ability to recover our deferred tax assets, our tax provision is increased in any period in which we determine that the recovery is not probable.

In addition, the calculation of our tax liabilities requires us to account for uncertainties in the application of complex tax regulations. We recognize liabilities for uncertain tax positions based on the two-step process prescribed within GAAP. The first step is to evaluate the tax position for recognition by determining if the weight of available evidence indicates that it is more likely than not that the position will be sustained on audit based upon its technical merits, including resolution of related appeals or litigation processes, if any. The second step requires us to estimate and measure the tax benefit as the largest amount that has greater than a 50 percent likelihood of being realized upon ultimate settlement. It is inherently difficult and subjective to estimate such amounts, as this requires us to determine the probability of various possible outcomes. We reevaluate these uncertain tax positions on a quarterly basis. This evaluation is based on factors including, but not limited to, changes in facts or circumstances, changes in tax law, effectively settled issues under audit, historical experience with similar tax matters, guidance from our tax advisors, and new audit activity. A change in recognition or measurement would result in the recognition of a tax benefit or an additional charge to the tax provision in the period in which the change occurs.

Customer Credit Risk and Estimates of Credits to be Issued to Customers

Our trade receivables subject us to credit risk, which is evaluated based on changing economic, political and specific customer conditions. We assess these risks and make provisions for collectability based on our best estimate of the risks presented and information available throughout the year. The use of different assumptions may change our estimate of collectability. We extend credit to our customers based upon an evaluation of the customer's financial condition and credit history and generally do not require collateral. Our credit terms generally range between 30 and 90 days from invoice date depending upon the evaluation of the customer's financial condition and history, pricing and the relationship with the customer. We monitor our customers' credit and financial condition in order to assess whether the economic conditions have changed and adjust our credit policies with respect to any individual customer as we determine appropriate. These adjustments may include, but are not limited to, restricting shipments to customers, reducing credit limits, shortening credit terms, requiring cash payments in advance of shipment or securing credit insurance.

We regularly receive requests for credits from retailers for returned products or in connection with sales incentives, such as cooperative advertising and volume rebate agreements. We reduce sales or increase SG&A, depending on the nature of the credits, for estimated future credits to customers. Our estimates of these amounts are based on either historical information about credits issued, relative to total sales, or on specific knowledge of incentives offered to retailers. This process entails a significant amount of subjectivity and uncertainty.

Valuation of Inventory

We currently record inventory on our balance sheet at average cost, or net realizable value, if it is below our recorded cost. Determination of net realizable value requires us to estimate the point in time at which an item's net realizable value drops below its recorded cost. We regularly review our inventory for slow-moving items and for items that we are unable to sell at prices above their original cost. When we identify such an item, we reduce its book value to the net amount that we expect to realize upon its sale. This process entails a significant amount of inherent subjectivity and uncertainty.

Goodwill and Indefinite-Lived Intangibles

As a result of acquisitions, we have significant intangible assets on our balance sheet that include goodwill and indefinite-lived intangibles (primarily trademarks and licenses). Accounting for business combinations requires the use of estimates and assumptions in determining the fair value of assets acquired and liabilities assumed in order to properly allocate the purchase price. The estimates of the fair value of the assets acquired and liabilities assumed are based upon assumptions believed to be reasonable using established valuation techniques that consider a number of factors, and when appropriate, valuations performed by independent third-party appraisers.

We consider whether circumstances or conditions exist which suggest that the carrying value of our goodwill and other long-lived assets might be impaired. If such circumstances or conditions exist, further steps are required in order to determine whether the carrying value of each of the individual assets exceeds its fair market value. If analysis indicates that an individual asset's carrying value does exceed its fair market value, the next step is to record a loss equal to the excess of the individual asset's carrying value over its fair value. The steps entail significant amounts of judgment and subjectivity.

We complete the annual analysis of the carrying value of our goodwill and other intangible assets during the fourth quarter of each fiscal year, or more frequently whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that their carrying value may not be recoverable.

Considerable management judgment is necessary in reaching a conclusion regarding the reasonableness of fair value estimates, evaluating the most likely impact of a range of possible external conditions, considering the resulting operating changes and their impact on estimated future cash flows, determining the appropriate discount factors to use, and selecting and weighting appropriate comparable market level inputs.

We continue to monitor our reporting units for any triggering events or other signs of impairment. For both the goodwill and indefinite-lived intangible assets in its reporting units, the recoverability of these amounts is dependent upon achievement of our projections and the continued execution of key initiatives related to revenue growth and improved profitability. The rates used in our projections are management's estimate of the most likely results over time, given a wide range of potential outcomes. The assumptions and estimates used in our impairment testing involve significant elements of subjective judgment and analysis by our management. While we believe that the assumptions we use are reasonable at the time made, changes in business conditions or other unanticipated events and circumstances may occur that cause actual results to differ materially from projected results and this could potentially require future adjustments to our asset valuations.

Carrying Value of Other Long-Lived Assets

We consider whether circumstances or conditions exist that suggest that the carrying value of a long-lived asset might be impaired. If such circumstances or conditions exist, further steps are required in order to determine whether the carrying value of the asset exceeds its fair market value. If analysis indicates that the asset's carrying value does exceed its fair market value, the next step is to record a loss equal to the excess of the asset's carrying value over its fair value. The steps entail significant amounts of judgment and subjectivity.

Economic Useful Life of Intangible Assets

We amortize intangible assets, such as licenses, trademarks, customer lists and distribution rights over their economic useful lives, unless those assets' economic useful lives are indefinite. If an intangible asset's economic useful life is deemed indefinite, that asset is not amortized. When we acquire an intangible asset, we consider factors such as the asset's history, our plans for that asset and the market for products associated with the asset. We consider these same factors when reviewing the economic useful lives of our previously acquired intangible assets as well. We review the economic useful lives of our intangible assets at least annually. The determination of the economic useful life of an intangible asset requires a significant amount of judgment and entails significant subjectivity and uncertainty. We complete our analysis of the remaining useful economic lives of our intangible assets during the fourth quarter of each fiscal year.

Share-Based Compensation

We account for share-based employee compensation plans under the fair value recognition and measurement provisions in accordance with applicable accounting standards, which require all share-based payments to employees, including grants of stock options, restricted stock awards ("RSAs"), restricted stock units ("RSUs") and performance restricted stock units ("PSUs"), to be measured based on the grant date fair value of the awards. The resulting expense is recognized over the periods during which the employee is required to perform service in exchange for the award. The estimated number of PSU's that will ultimately vest requires judgment, and to the extent actual results or updated estimates differ from our current estimates, such amounts will be recorded as a cumulative adjustment in the period estimates are revised.

Stock options are recognized in the financial statements based on their fair values using an option pricing model at the date of grant. We use a Black-Scholes option-pricing model to calculate the fair value of options. This model requires various judgmental assumptions including volatility and expected option life.

For a more comprehensive list of our accounting policies, we encourage you to read Note 1 included in the accompanying consolidated financial statements. Note 1 describes several other policies, including policies governing the timing of revenue recognition, that are important to the preparation of our consolidated financial statements, but do not meet the SEC's definition of critical accounting policies because they do not involve subjective or complex judgments.

New Accounting Guidance

Refer to Note 2 in the accompanying consolidated financial statements for a discussion of any new accounting pronouncements and the potential impact to our consolidated results of operations and financial position.

Item 7A. Quantitative and Qualitative Disclosures About Market Risk

Changes in currency exchange rates and interest rates are our primary financial market risks.

Foreign Currency Risk

Our functional currency is the U.S. Dollar. By operating internationally, we are subject to foreign currency risk from transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar ("foreign currencies"). Such transactions include sales, certain inventory purchases and operating expenses. As a result of such transactions, portions of our cash, trade accounts receivable and trade accounts payable are denominated in foreign currencies. For fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, approximately 13%, 13% and 16%, respectively, of our net sales revenue was in foreign currencies. These sales were primarily denominated in British Pounds, Euros, Mexican Pesos, Canadian Dollars, and Venezuelan Bolivars. We make most of our inventory purchases from the Far East and use the U.S. Dollar for such purchases. In our consolidated statements of income, exchange gains and losses resulting from the remeasurement of foreign taxes receivable, taxes payable, deferred tax assets, and deferred tax liabilities are recognized in their respective income tax lines, and all other foreign exchange gains and losses are recognized in SG&A.

We identify foreign currency risk by regularly monitoring our foreign currency-denominated transactions and balances. Where operating conditions permit, we reduce foreign currency risk by purchasing most of our inventory with U.S. Dollars and by converting cash balances denominated in foreign currencies to U.S. Dollars.

We hedge against certain foreign currency exchange rate-risk by using a series of forward contracts designated as cash flow hedges and mark-to-market derivatives to protect against the foreign currency exchange risk inherent in our forecasted transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar. Our primary objective in holding derivatives is to reduce the volatility of net earnings and cash flows, and the net asset value associated with changes in foreign currency exchange rates. Our foreign currency risk management strategy includes both hedging instruments and derivatives that are not designated as hedging instruments, which generally have terms of up to 18 months. We do not enter into any forward exchange contracts or similar instruments for trading or other speculative purposes. We expect that as currency market conditions warrant, and our foreign denominated transaction exposure grows, we will continue to execute additional contracts in order to hedge against certain potential foreign exchange losses. Refer to Note 17 in the accompanying consolidated financial statements for further information regarding these instruments.

Chinese Renminbi Currency Exchange Uncertainties

A significant portion of the products we sell are purchased from third-party manufacturers in China. The Chinese Renminbi has fluctuated against the U.S. Dollar in recent years and in fiscal 2018 the Chinese Renminbi strengthened against the U.S. Dollar by approximately 8.0%. If China's currency continues to fluctuate against the U.S. Dollar in the short-to-intermediate term, we cannot accurately predict the impact of those fluctuations on our results of operations. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that foreign exchange rates will be stable in the future or that fluctuations in Chinese foreign currency markets will not have a material adverse effect on our business, results of operations and financial condition.

Interest Rate Risk

Interest on our outstanding debt as of February 28, 2018 is floating, as such, we are exposed to changes in short-term market interest rates and these changes in rates will impact our net interest expense. Additionally, our cash and short-term investments generate interest income that will vary based on changes in short-term interest. Refer to Notes 15 and 17 in the accompanying consolidated financial statements for further information regarding our interest rate sensitive assets and liabilities.

Rate Sensitive Financial Instruments

The following table shows the approximate potential fair value change in U.S. Dollars that would arise from a hypothetical adverse 10% change in certain market-based rates underlying our rate sensitive financial instruments as of February 28, 2018 and 2017.

| | | | | February | [,] 28, | 2018 | | |
|---|----|----------|----|----------|------------------|---------|----|-----------|
| | | Face or | | | | | Es | stimated |
| | N | lotional | С | arrying | | Fair | Cł | hange in |
| (in thousands) | | Amount | | Value | | Value | Fa | air Value |
| Foreign currency contracts - cross-currency debt swap - Euro | \$ | 5,280 | \$ | (5,488) | \$ | (5,488) | \$ | (549) |
| Foreign currency contracts - cross-currency debt swap - Pound | \$ | 6,395 | \$ | (6,960) | \$ | (6,960) | \$ | (696) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Euro (2) | € | 38,000 | \$ | (1,218) | \$ | (1,218) | \$ | (4,709) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Canadian Dollar (2) | \$ | 27,750 | \$ | 479 | \$ | 479 | \$ | (2,390) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Pound (2) | £ | 19,500 | \$ | (457) | \$ | (457) | \$ | (2,713) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Mexican Peso (2) | \$ | 20,000 | \$ | 5 | \$ | 5 | \$ | (116) |
| Interest rate swap | \$ | 100,000 | \$ | 2,481 | \$ | 2,481 | \$ | (910) |

| | | | | February | 28, | 2017 | | |
|---|----|----------|----|----------|-----|----------|----|----------|
| | F | ace or | | | | | Es | timated |
| | N | lotional | (| Carrying | | Fair | Cł | nange in |
| (in thousands) | P | Amount | | Value | | Value | Fa | ir Value |
| Fixed rate long-term debt (1) | \$ | 20,000 | \$ | (19,763) | \$ | (19,858) | \$ | 247 |
| Foreign currency contracts - cross-currency debt swap | \$ | 10,000 | \$ | (9,295) | \$ | (9,295) | \$ | (929) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Euro (2) | € | 27,500 | \$ | 727 | \$ | 727 | \$ | (2,944) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Canadian Dollar (2) | \$ | 24,000 | \$ | 187 | \$ | 187 | \$ | (2,178) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Pound (2) | £ | 13,500 | \$ | 548 | \$ | 548 | \$ | (1,686) |
| Foreign currency contracts - Mexican Peso (2) | \$ | 59,600 | \$ | (47) | \$ | (47) | \$ | (318) |

- (1) The underlying interest rates used as a basis for these estimates are rates quoted by our lenders on fixed rate notes of similar term and credit quality as of the balance sheet dates shown.
- (2) Appreciation in the value of the U.S. Dollar would result in an increase in the fair value of the related foreign currency contracts.

The table above is for risk analysis purposes and does not purport to represent actual losses or gains in fair value that we could incur. It is important to note that the change in value represents the estimated change in the fair value of the contracts. Actual results in the future may differ materially from these estimated results due to actual developments in the global financial markets. Because the contracts hedge an underlying exposure, we would expect a similar and opposite change in foreign exchange gains or losses and floating interest rates over the same periods as the contracts.

Item 8. Financial Statements and Supplementary Data

INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS AND FINANCIAL STATEMENT SCHEDULE

| | PAGE |
|--|------|
| Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting | 59 |
| Reports of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm | 60 |
| Consolidated Financial Statements: | |
| Consolidated Balance Sheets as of February 28, 2018 and February 28, 2017 | 62 |
| Consolidated Statements of Income for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 28, 2018 | 63 |
| Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income for each of the years in the three- year period ended February 28, 2018 | 64 |
| Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 28, 2018 | 65 |
| Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 28, 2018 | 66 |
| Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements | 67 |
| Financial Statement Schedule: | |
| Schedule II - Valuation and Qualifying Accounts for each of the years in the three-year period ended February 28, 2018 | 102 |
| All other schedules are omitted as the required information is included in the consolidated financial statements or is not applicable. | |
| 50 | |

MANAGEMENT'S REPORT ON INTERNAL CONTROL OVER FINANCIAL REPORTING

Helen of Troy's management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting as defined by Rules 13a-15(f) or 15d-15(f) under the Securities Exchange Act.

Our internal control system is designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles and includes those policies and procedures that:

- pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect our transactions and dispositions of assets;
- provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation
 of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that our
 receipts and expenditures are being made only in accordance with authorizations of our
 management and Board of Directors; and
- provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use or disposition of our assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

There are inherent limitations in the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, including the possibility that misstatements may not be prevented or detected. Furthermore, the effectiveness of internal controls may become inadequate because of future changes in conditions, or variations in the degree of compliance with our policies or procedures.

Our management assesses the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting using the criteria set forth by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission ("COSO") in the 2013 Internal Control-Integrated Framework. Based on our assessment, we concluded that our internal control over financial reporting was effective as of February 28, 2018.

Our independent registered public accounting firm, Grant Thornton LLP, has issued an audit report on the effectiveness of our internal control over financial reporting. Their report appears on the following page.

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Board of Directors and Shareholders Helen of Troy Limited

Opinion on internal control over financial reporting

We have audited the internal control over financial reporting of Helen of Troy Limited and subsidiaries (the "Company") as of February 28, 2018, based on criteria established in the 2013 Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission ("COSO"). In our opinion, the Company maintained, in all material respects, effective internal control over financial reporting as of February 28, 2018, based on criteria established in the 2013 Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by COSO.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB"), the consolidated financial statements of the Company as of and for the year ended February 28, 2018, and our report dated April 30, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion on those financial statements.

Basis for opinion

The Company's management is responsible for maintaining effective internal control over financial reporting and for its assessment of the effectiveness of internal control over financial reporting, included in the accompanying Management's Report on Internal Control over Financial Reporting. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's internal control over financial reporting based on our audit. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audit in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether effective internal control over financial reporting was maintained in all material respects. Our audit included obtaining an understanding of internal control over financial reporting, assessing the risk that a material weakness exists, testing and evaluating the design and operating effectiveness of internal control based on the assessed risk, and performing such other procedures as we considered necessary in the circumstances. We believe that our audit provides a reasonable basis for our opinion.

Definition and limitations of internal control over financial reporting

A company's internal control over financial reporting is a process designed to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles. A company's internal control over financial reporting includes those policies and procedures that (1) pertain to the maintenance of records that, in reasonable detail, accurately and fairly reflect the transactions and dispositions of the assets of the company; (2) provide reasonable assurance that transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles, and that receipts and expenditures of the company are being made only in accordance with authorizations of management and directors of the company; and (3) provide reasonable assurance regarding prevention or timely detection of unauthorized acquisition, use, or disposition of the company's assets that could have a material effect on the financial statements.

Because of its inherent limitations, internal control over financial reporting may not prevent or detect misstatements. Also, projections of any evaluation of effectiveness to future periods are subject to the risk that controls may become inadequate because of changes in conditions, or that the degree of compliance with the policies or procedures may deteriorate.

/s/ GRANT THORNTON LLP

Dallas, Texas April 30, 2018

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

Board of Directors and Shareholders Helen of Troy Limited

Opinion on the financial statements

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Helen of Troy Limited and subsidiaries (the "Company") as of February 28, 2018 and 2017, the related consolidated statements of income, comprehensive income, shareholders' equity, and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended February 28, 2018, and the related notes and schedule (collectively referred to as the "financial statements"). In our opinion, the financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of February 28, 2018 and 2017, and the results of its operations and its cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended February 28, 2018, in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America.

We also have audited, in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) ("PCAOB"), the Company's internal control over financial reporting as of February 28, 2018, based on criteria established in the 2013 Internal Control—Integrated Framework issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission ("COSO"), and our report dated February 28, 2018 expressed an unqualified opinion thereon.

Basis for opinion

These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the PCAOB and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

/s/ GRANT THORNTON LLP

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2008.

Dallas, Texas April 30, 2018

Consolidated Balance Sheets

| Receivables - principally trade, less allowances of \$5,309 and \$5,560 Inventory Prepaid expenses and other current assets Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | \$ | 20,738 273,168 251,511 9,545 | \$ | 23,848 |
|---|----|---------------------------------------|----|-----------|
| Cash and cash equivalents Receivables - principally trade, less allowances of \$5,309 and \$5,560 Inventory Prepaid expenses and other current assets Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | \$ | 273,168 251,511 | \$ | 23,848 |
| Receivables - principally trade, less allowances of \$5,309 and \$5,560 Inventory Prepaid expenses and other current assets Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | \$ | 273,168 251,511 | \$ | 23,848 |
| Receivables - principally trade, less allowances of \$5,309 and \$5,560 Inventory Prepaid expenses and other current assets Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | | 273,168 251,511 | | |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | | • | | 229,416 |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | | • | | 280,877 |
| Income taxes receivable Current assets related to discontinued operations Total assets, current | | | | 9.668 |
| Total assets, current | | 349 | | 2,242 |
| Total assets, current | | - | | 10,027 |
| D | | 555,311 | | 556,078 |
| Property and equipment, net of accumulated depreciation of \$115,202 and \$102,153 | | 123,503 | | 126,502 |
| Goodwill | | 602,320 | | 602,320 |
| Other intangible assets, net of accumulated amortization of \$167,354 and \$148,673 | | 302,915 | | 336,004 |
| Deferred tax assets, net | | 16,654 | | 1,955 |
| Other assets, net of accumulated amortization of \$2,022 and \$1,930 | | 20,617 | | 1,110 |
| Non-current assets related to discontinued operations | | | | 189,127 |
| Total assets | \$ | 1,621,320 | \$ | 1,813,096 |
| | | | | |
| Liabilities and Stockholders' Equity Liabilities, current: | | | | |
| Accounts payable, principally trade | \$ | 129,341 | \$ | 105,652 |
| Accounts payable, principally trade Accrued expenses and other current liabilities | Ф | 165,864 | φ | 148,098 |
| Long-term debt, current maturities | | 1,884 | | 24,404 |
| Current liabilities related to discontinued operations | | 1,004 | | 11,213 |
| Total liabilities, current | | 297,089 | | 289,367 |
| • | | ŕ | | |
| Long-term debt, excluding current maturities | | 287,985 | | 461,211 |
| Deferred tax liabilities, net | | 7,096 | | 20,091 |
| Other liabilities, noncurrent | | 14,691 | | 17,342 |
| Non-current liabilities related to discontinued operations | | - | | 4,319 |
| Total liabilities | | 606,861 | | 792,330 |
| Commitments and contingencies | | | | |
| Stockholders' equity: | | | | |
| Cumulative preferred stock, non-voting, \$1.00 par. Authorized 2,000,000 shares; | | | | |
| none issued | | - | | |
| Common stock, \$0.10 par. Authorized 50,000,000 shares; 26,575,634 and 27,028,665 shares | | | | |
| issued and outstanding | | 2,658 | | 2.703 |
| Additional paid in capital | | 230,676 | | 218,760 |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income | | 631 | | 1,173 |
| Retained earnings | | 780,494 | | 798,130 |
| Total stockholders' equity | | 1,014,459 | | 1,020,766 |
| Total liabilities and stockholders' equity | \$ | 1,621,320 | \$ | 1,813,096 |

Consolidated Statements of Income

| | Fiscal Years | Ende | ed the Last Da | y of F | ebruary, |
|--|-----------------|------|----------------|--------|-----------|
| (in thousands, except per share data) | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ 1,489,747 | \$ | 1,406,676 | \$ | 1,392,575 |
| Cost of goods sold | 867,646 | | 824,119 | | 866,841 |
| Gross profit | 622,101 | | 582,557 | | 525,734 |
| Selling, general and administrative expense ("SG&A") | 435,735 | | 409,993 | | 403,440 |
| Asset impairment charges | 15,447 | | 2,900 | | 6,000 |
| Restructuring charges | 1,857 | | = | | - |
| Operating income | 169,062 | | 169,664 | | 116,294 |
| Nonoperating income, net | 327 | | 414 | | 299 |
| Interest expense | (13,951) | | (14,361) | | (10,581) |
| Income before income tax | 155,438 | | 155,717 | | 106,012 |
| Income tax expense | 26,556 | | 11,407 | | 13,021 |
| Income from continuing operations | 128,882 | | 144,310 | | 92,991 |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations, net of tax | (84,436) | | (3,621) | | 8,237 |
| Net income | \$ 44,446 | \$ | 140,689 | \$ | 101,228 |
| | | | | | |
| Earnings (loss) per share - basic: | | | | | |
| Continuing operations | \$ 4.76 | \$ | 5.24 | \$ | 3.29 |
| Discontinued operations | (3.12) | | (0.13) | _ | 0.29 |
| Total earnings per share - basic | \$ 1.64 | \$ | 5.11 | \$ | 3.58 |
| Earnings (loss) per share - diluted: | | | | | |
| Continuing operations | \$ 4.73 | \$ | 5.17 | \$ | 3.23 |
| Discontinued operations | (3.10) | | (0.13) | | 0.29 |
| Total earnings per share - diluted | \$ 1.63 | \$ | 5.04 | \$ | 3.52 |
| | | | | | |
| Weighted average shares of common stock used in | | | | | |
| computing earnings per share: | | | | | |
| Basic | 27,077 | | 27,522 | | 28,273 |
| Diluted | 27,254 | | 27,891 | | 28,749 |

Consolidated Statements of Comprehensive Income

| | | | Fisc | al Years En | ded the Las | t Day of Feb | ruary, | | |
|---|------------|-------------|------------|-------------------|-------------|-------------------|-------------------|-------------|------------|
| | | 2018 | | | 2017 | | | 2016 | |
| | Before | | Net of | Before | | Net of | Before | | Net of |
| (in thousands) | Tax | Tax | Tax | Tax | Tax | Tax | Tax | Tax | Tax |
| Income from continuing operations | \$ 155,438 | \$ (26,556) | \$ 128,882 | \$ 155,717 | \$ (11,407) | \$ 144,310 | \$ 106,012 | \$ (13,021) | \$ 92,991 |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations | (133,811) | 49,375 | (84,436) | (5,828) | 2,207 | (3,621) | 13,806 | (5,569) | 8,237 |
| Other comprehensive income | | | | | | | | | |
| Cash flow hedge activity - interest rate | | | | | | | | | |
| swaps | | | | | | | | | |
| Changes in fair market value | 2,481 | (776) | 1,705 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Settlements reclassified to income | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Subtotal | 2,481 | (776) | 1,705 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| | • | | • | | | | | | |
| Cash flow hedge activity - foreign currency contracts | | | | | | | | | |
| Changes in fair market value | 1,758 | (455) | 1,303 | 2,205 | (380) | 1,825 | 1,978 | (314) | 1,664 |
| Settlements reclassified to income | (4,364) | 814 | (3,550) | (1,454) | 137 | (1,317) | (1,203) | 280 | (923) |
| Subtotal | (2,606) | 359 | (2,247) | 751 | (243) | 508 | 775 | (34) | 741 |
| Total other comprehensive income (loss | s) (125) | (417) | (542) | 751 | (243) | 508 | 775 | (34) | 741 |
| Comprehensive income | \$ 21.502 | \$ 22,402 | \$ 43.904 | \$ 150.640 | \$ (9.443) | \$ 141.197 | \$ 120.593 | \$ (18.624) | \$ 101.969 |

Consolidated Statements of Stockholders' Equity

| | | Fiscal Years Ended | the l | Last Day of F | ebru | uary, |
|---|----|--------------------|----------|---------------|------|----------|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 |
| Common stock shares | | | | | | |
| Balances, beginning of period | | 27,029 | | 27,735 | | 28,488 |
| Exercise of stock options | | 126 | | 170 | | 178 |
| Restricted share-based compensation | | 48 | | 21 | | 285 |
| Vesting of performance awards | | 150 | | - | | - |
| Issuance of common stock in connection with employee stock | | | | | | |
| purchase plan | | 16 | | 32 | | 28 |
| Common stock repurchased and retired | | (793) | | (929) | | (1,244) |
| Balances, end of period | | 26,576 | | 27,029 | _ | 27,735 |
| Common stock | | | | | | |
| | \$ | 0.700 | o | 2.774 | \$ | 2.040 |
| Balances, beginning of period | Ф | 2,703 | \$ | , | Ф | 2,849 |
| Exercise of stock options | | 12 | | 17 | | 18 |
| Restricted share-based compensation | | 5 | | 2 | | 28 |
| Vesting of performance awards | | 15 | | - | | - |
| Issuance of common stock in connection with employee stock | | • | | 0 | | ^ |
| purchase plan | | 2 | | 3 | | (424) |
| Common stock repurchased and retired | _ | (79) | _ | (93) | _ | (124) |
| Balances, end of period | \$ | 2,658 | \$ | 2,703 | \$ | 2,774 |
| Paid in capital | | | | | | |
| Balances, beginning of period | \$ | 218,760 | \$ | 198,077 | \$ | 179,934 |
| Cumulative effect of accounting change | | | | 588 | | - |
| Stock option share-based compensation | | 2,658 | | 3,194 | | 3,513 |
| Exercise of stock options, including tax benefits of \$0, \$0 and \$1,581 | | 6,546 | | 7,288 | | 8,304 |
| Restricted share-based compensation, including tax benefits of \$0, \$0 and \$1,894 | | 4,978 | | 12,304 | | 21,836 |
| Issuance of common stock in connection with employee stock | | , | | | | |
| purchase plan | | 1,525 | | 2,487 | | 1,924 |
| Common stock repurchased and retired | | (3,791) | | (5,178) | | (17,434) |
| Balances, end of period | \$ | 230,676 | \$ | 218,760 | \$ | 198,077 |
| A course date of athere accourse benefits in come | | | | | | |
| Accumulated other comprehensive income | _ | 4 470 | • | 005 | Φ. | (70) |
| Balances, beginning of period | \$ | 1,173 | \$ | 665 | \$ | (76) |
| Cash flow hedge activity - interest rate swaps, net of tax | | 1,705 | | - | | 744 |
| Cash flow hedge activity - foreign currency, net of tax | | (2,247) | _ | 508 | _ | 741 |
| Balances, end of period | \$ | 631 | \$ | 1,173 | \$ | 665 |
| Retained earnings | | | | | | |
| Balances, beginning of period | \$ | 798,130 | \$ | 728,527 | \$ | 721,858 |
| Cumulative effect of accounting change | | - | | (856) | | - |
| Net income | | 44,446 | | 140,689 | | 101,228 |
| Common stock repurchased and retired | | (62,082) | | (70,230) | | (94,559) |
| Balances, end of period | \$ | 780,494 | \$ | 798,130 | \$ | 728,527 |
| Total stockholders' equity | \$ | 1,014,459 | \$ | 1,020,766 | Φ | 930,043 |
| Total stockholders' equity | φ | 1,014,459 | φ | 1,020,700 | φ | 930,043 |

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February | | | | | | | | |
|--|---|-----------|----------------|----------------|----|-------------------------|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 | | | |
| Cash provided (used) by operating activities: | | | | | | | | | |
| Net income | \$ | 44,446 | \$ | 140,689 | \$ | 101,228 | | | |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations | | (84,436) | | (3,621) | | 8,237 | | | |
| Income from continuing operations | | 128,882 | | 144,310 | | 92,991 | | | |
| Adjustments to reconcile income from continuing operations to net | | | | | | | | | |
| cash provided by operating activities: | | | | | | | | | |
| Depreciation and amortization | | 33,730 | | 36,175 | | 34,889 | | | |
| Amortization of financing costs | | 887 | | 706 | | 651 | | | |
| Provision for doubtful receivables | | 1,066 | | 2,277 | | 223 | | | |
| Non-cash share-based compensation | | 15,054 | | 13,861 | | 7,164 | | | |
| Non-cash intangible asset impairment charges | | 15,447 | | 2,900 | | 6,000 | | | |
| Non-cash Venezuelan re-measurement related charges | | - | | - | | 17,441 | | | |
| Gain on the sale or disposal of property and equipment | | 331 | | 197 | | 84 | | | |
| Deferred income taxes and tax credits | | 21,264 | | (7,499) | | (2,384 | | | |
| Changes in operating capital, net of effects of acquisition of businesses: | | | | | | | | | |
| Receivables | | (44,818) | | (6,592) | | (3,437 | | | |
| Inventories | | 29,366 | | 17,161 | | (14,896 | | | |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets | | (383) | | (1,908) | | (2,224 | | | |
| Other assets and liabilities, net | | (16,728) | | (814) | | 9,957 | | | |
| Accounts payable | | 23,689 | | 6,299 | | 3,949 | | | |
| Accrued expenses and other current liabilities | | 12,190 | | 8,894 | | 18,673 | | | |
| Accrued income taxes | | (1,368) | | (3,476) | | 1,180 | | | |
| Net cash provided by operating activities - continuing operations | | 218,609 | | 212.491 | | 170,263 | | | |
| Net cash provided by operating activities - discontinued operations | | 5,598 | | 16,010 | | 16,282 | | | |
| Net cash provided by operating activities Net cash provided by operating activities | | 224,207 | | 228,501 | | 186,545 | | | |
| rect cash provided by operating activities | | 224,201 | | 220,001 | | 100,040 | | | |
| Cash provided (used) by investing activities: | | | | | | | | | |
| Capital and intangible asset expenditures | | (42 COE) | | (15 507) | | (16.676 | | | |
| Dragged from the cale of preparty and aguinment | | (13,605) | | (15,507) 32 | | (16,676 | | | |
| Proceeds from the sale of property and equipment | | 13 | | | | (40.450 | | | |
| Payments to acquire businesses, net of cash acquired | | (40.500) | | (209,267) | | (43,150 | | | |
| Net cash used by investing activities - continuing operations | | (13,592) | | (224,742) | | (59,819 | | | |
| Net cash provided (used) by investing activities - discontinued operations | | 49,226 | | (5,112) | | (3,927 | | | |
| Net cash provided (used) by investing activities | | 35,634 | | (229,854) | | (63,746 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| Cash provided (used) by financing activities: | | | | 4=0.000 | | | | | |
| Proceeds from line of credit | | 521,200 | | 470,900 | | 802,600 | | | |
| Repayment of line of credit | | (692,500) | | (580,300) | | (590,000 | | | |
| Repayment of long-term debt | | (25,700) | | (23,800) | | (21,900 | | | |
| Payment of financing costs | | | | (2,299) | | (19 | | | |
| Proceeds from share issuances under share-based compensation plans | | 7,658 | | `9,734 | | 12,025 | | | |
| Payment of tax obligations resulting from cashless share award settlements | | (7,053) | | (595) | | - | | | |
| Payment of tax obligations resulting from cashless share settlement of | | | | | | | | | |
| severance obligation | | - | | - | | (12,000 | | | |
| Payments for repurchases of common stock | | (65,795) | | (75,000) | | (100,000 | | | |
| Net cash provided (used) by financing activities - continuing operations | | (262,190) | | (201,360) | | 90,706 | | | |
| Net cash provided by financing activities - discontinued operations | | - | | - | | - | | | |
| Net cash provided (used) by financing activities | | (262,190) | | (201,360) | | 90,706 | | | |
| · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | | | | • | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| Net decrease in cash and cash equivalents | | (2,349) | | (202,713) | | 213,505 | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents, beginning balance | | 23,087 | | 225,800 | | 12,295 | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents, ending balance | | 20,738 | | 23,087 | | 225,800 | | | |
| Less: Cash and cash equivalents of discontinued operations, ending balance | | 20,700 | | (761) | | (1,664 | | | |
| | • | 20.720 | • | | ¢ | | | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents of continuing operations, ending balance | \$ | 20,738 | \$ | 23,848 | \$ | 227,464 | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | 4 | | | |
| | | | - | | | 42 000 | | | |
| Interest paid | \$ | 13,543 | \$ | 9,978 | \$ | | | | |
| Interest paid Income taxes paid, net of refunds | \$ | 6,081 | \$ | 15,950 | \$ | 16,591 | | | |
| | | | \$ \$ \$ | | | 16,591 | | | |
| Interest paid Income taxes paid, net of refunds | \$ | 6,081 | \$ | 15,950 | \$ | 13,990 16,591 257 | | | |

HELEN OF TROY LIMITED AND SUBSIDIARIES NOTES TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

(in thousands of U.S. Dollars, except share and per share data, unless indicated otherwise)

Note 1 - Summary of Significant Accounting Policies and Related Information

General

When used in these notes, unless otherwise indicated or the context suggests otherwise, references to "the Company", "our Company", "Helen of Troy", "we", "us", or "our" refer to Helen of Troy Limited and its subsidiaries. We refer to our common shares, par value \$0.10 per share, as "common stock." References to "the FASB" refer to the Financial Accounting Standards Board. References to "GAAP" refer to U.S. generally accepted accounting principles. References to "ASU" refer to the codification of GAAP in the Accounting Standards Updates issued by the FASB. References to "ASC" refer to the codification of GAAP in the Accounting Standards Codification issued by the FASB.

We incorporated as Helen of Troy Corporation in Texas in 1968 and were reorganized as Helen of Troy Limited in Bermuda in 1994. We are a global designer, developer, importer, marketer, and distributor of an expanding portfolio of brand-name consumer products. As of February 28, 2018, we operated three segments: Housewares, Health & Home, and Beauty. Our Housewares segment provides a broad range of innovative consumer products for the home. Product offerings include food preparation tools and storage containers; cleaning, bath and garden tools and accessories; infant and toddler care products; and insulated beverage and food containers. The Health & Home segment focuses on healthcare devices such as thermometers, humidifiers, blood pressure monitors, and heating pads; water filtration systems; and small home appliances such as portable heaters, fans, air purifiers, and insect control devices. Our Beauty segment products include electric hair care, beauty care and wellness appliances; grooming tools and accessories; and liquid-, solid- and powder-based personal care and grooming products.

On December 20, 2017, we completed the divestiture of the Nutritional Supplements segment through the sale of Healthy Directions LLC and its subsidiaries to Direct Digital, LLC. The results of the Nutritional Supplements operations have been reported as discontinued operations for all periods presented in the consolidated financial statements. For more information see Note 4 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements, All other footnotes present results from continuing operations.

Our business is seasonal due to different calendar events, holidays and seasonal weather patterns. Historically, our highest sales volume and operating income occur in our third fiscal quarter ending November 30 th. We purchase our products from unaffiliated manufacturers, most of which are located in China, Mexico and the United States.

The preparation of financial statements in accordance with GAAP requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the amounts reported in our consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes. Actual results may differ materially from those estimates.

Our consolidated financial statements are prepared in United States ("U.S.") Dollars. All intercompany accounts and transactions are eliminated in consolidation.

We have reclassified, combined or separately disclosed certain amounts in the prior years' consolidated financial statements and accompanying footnotes, including reclassifications for discontinued operations, to conform to the current year's presentation.

Our significant accounting policies include:

Cash and cash equivalents

Cash equivalents include all highly liquid investments with an original maturity of three months or less. We maintain cash and cash equivalents at several financial institutions, which at times may not be federally insured or may exceed federally insured limits. We have not experienced any losses in such accounts and believe we are not exposed to any significant credit risks on such accounts. We consider money market accounts to be cash equivalents.

Receivables

Our receivables are comprised of trade credit granted to customers, primarily in the retail industry, offset by two valuation reserves: an allowance for doubtful receivables and an allowance for sales returns. Our allowance for doubtful receivables reflects our best estimate of probable losses, determined principally based on historical experience and specific allowances for known at-risk accounts. Our policy is to write off receivables when we have determined they will no longer be collectible. Write-offs are applied as a reduction to the allowance for doubtful accounts and any recoveries of previous write-offs are netted against bad debt expense in the period recovered. Our allowance for sales returns reflects our best estimate of future customer returns, determined principally based on historical experience and specific allowances for known pending returns.

We have a significant concentration of credit risk with two major customers at February 28, 2018 representing approximately 19% and 11% of gross trade receivables, respectively. In addition, as of February 28, 2018 and 2017, approximately 48% and 44%, respectively, of our gross trade receivables in each year were due from our five top customers.

Foreign currency transactions and related derivative financial instruments

The U.S. Dollar is the functional currency for the Company and all of its subsidiaries; therefore, we do not have a translation adjustment recorded through accumulated other comprehensive income. All our non-U.S. subsidiaries' transactions involving other currencies have been re-measured in U.S. Dollars using exchange rates in effect on the date each transaction occurred. In our consolidated statements of income, exchange gains and losses resulting from the remeasurement of foreign taxes receivable, taxes payable, deferred tax assets, and deferred tax liabilities are recognized in their respective income tax lines and all other foreign exchange gains and losses are recognized in SG&A. In order to manage our exposure to changes in foreign currency exchange rates, we use forward currency contracts to exchange foreign currencies for U.S. Dollars at specified rates. We account for these transactions as cash flow hedges, which requires these derivatives to be recorded on the balance sheet at their fair value and that changes in the fair value of the forward exchange contracts are recorded each period in our consolidated statements of income or comprehensive income, depending on the type of hedging instrument and the effectiveness of the hedges. We evaluate all hedging transactions each quarter to determine that they remain effective. Any material ineffectiveness is recorded as part of SG&A in our consolidated statements of income.

Inventory and cost of goods sold

Our inventory consists almost entirely of finished goods. We currently record inventory on our consolidated balance sheets at average cost, or net realizable value, if it is below our recorded cost. Our average costs include the amounts we pay manufacturers for product, tariffs and duties associated with transporting product across national borders, freight costs associated with transporting the product from our manufacturers to our distribution centers, and general and administrative expenses directly attributable to acquiring inventory, as applicable.

General and administrative expenses in inventory include all the expenses of operating our sourcing activities and expenses incurred for production monitoring, product design, engineering, and packaging. We charged \$43.2, \$41.7, and \$39.2 million of such general and administrative expenses to inventory during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. We estimate that \$11.8 and \$12.8 million of general and administrative expenses directly attributable to the procurement of inventory were included in our inventory balances on hand at February 28, 2018 and 2017, respectively.

The "Cost of goods sold" line item in the consolidated statements of income is comprised of the book value of inventory sold to customers during the reporting period. When circumstances dictate that we use net realizable value as the basis for recording inventory, we base our estimates on expected future selling prices less expected disposal costs.

For fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, finished goods purchased from vendors in the Far East comprised approximately 74%, 71% and 70%, respectively, of finished goods purchased. During fiscal 2018, we had one vendor who fulfilled approximately 11% of our product requirements. Our top two manufacturers combined fulfilled approximately 19% of our product requirements. Over the same period, our top five suppliers fulfilled approximately 34% of our product requirements.

Property and equipment

These assets are stated at cost. Depreciation is recorded on a straight-line basis over the estimated useful lives of the assets. Expenditures for repair and maintenance of property and equipment are expensed as incurred. For tax purposes, accelerated depreciation methods are used where allowed by tax laws.

License agreements, trademarks, patents, and other intangible assets

A significant portion of our sales are made subject to trademark license agreements with various licensors. Our license agreements are reported on our consolidated balance sheets at cost, less accumulated amortization. The cost of our license agreements represent amounts paid to licensors to acquire the license or to alter the terms of the license in a manner that we believe to be in our best interest. Certain licenses have extension terms that may require additional payments to the licensor as part of the terms of renewal. We capitalize costs incurred to renew or extend the term of a license agreement and amortize such costs on a straight-line basis over the remaining term or economic life of the agreement, whichever is shorter. Royalty payments are not included in the cost of license agreements. Royalty expense under our license agreements is recognized as incurred and is included in our consolidated statements of income in SG&A. Net sales revenue subject to trademark license agreements requiring royalty payments comprised approximately 45%, 44% and 45% of consolidated net sales revenue for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. During fiscal 2018, two license agreements accounted for net sales revenue subject to royalty payments of approximately 14% and 13% of consolidated net sales, respectively. No other license agreements had associated net sales revenue subject to royalty payments that accounted for 10% or more of consolidated net sales revenue.

We also sell products under trademarks and brand assets that we own. Trademarks and brand assets that we acquire from other entities are generally recorded on our consolidated balance sheets based upon the appraised fair value of the acquired asset, net of any accumulated amortization and impairment charges. Costs associated with developing trademarks internally are recorded as expenses in the period incurred. In certain instances where trademarks or brand assets have readily determinable useful lives, we amortize their costs on a straight-line basis over such lives. In most instances, we have determined that such acquired assets have an indefinite useful life. In these cases, no amortization is recorded. Patents acquired through acquisition, if material, are recorded on our consolidated balance sheets based upon the appraised value of the acquired patents and amortized over the remaining life of the patent. Additionally, we incur certain costs in connection with the design

and development of products to be covered by patents, which are capitalized as incurred and amortized on a straight-line basis over the life of the patent in the jurisdiction filed, typically 14 years.

Other intangible assets include customer lists, distribution rights, patent rights, and non-compete agreements that we acquired. These are recorded on our consolidated balance sheets based upon the fair value of the acquired asset and amortized on a straight-line basis over the remaining life of the asset as determined either through outside appraisal or by the term of any controlling agreements.

Goodwill, intangible and other long-lived assets and related impairment testing

Goodwill is recorded as the difference, if any, between the aggregate consideration paid and the fair value of the net tangible and intangible assets received in the acquisition of a business. We evaluate goodwill at the reporting unit level (operating segment or one level below an operating segment). We measure the amount of any goodwill impairment based upon the estimated fair value of the underlying assets and liabilities of the reporting unit, including any unrecognized intangible assets and estimates of the implied fair value of goodwill. An impairment charge is recognized to the extent the recorded goodwill exceeds the implied fair value of goodwill.

We complete our analysis of the carrying value of our goodwill and other intangible assets annually, or more frequently, whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate their carrying value may not be recoverable. If such circumstances or conditions exist, further steps are required in order to determine whether the carrying value of each of the individual assets exceeds its fair market value. If the analysis indicates that an individual asset's carrying value does exceed its fair market value, the next step is to record a loss equal to the excess of the individual asset's carrying value over its fair value. These steps entail significant amounts of judgment and subjectivity.

Our annual impairment testing for goodwill and indefinite-lived assets had historically occurred in the first quarter of our fiscal year. In December 2016, we elected to change our annual impairment testing to the fourth quarter of our fiscal year.

Economic useful lives and amortization of intangible assets

We amortize intangible assets, such as licenses and trademarks, over their economic useful lives, unless those assets' economic useful lives are indefinite. If an intangible asset's economic useful life is deemed indefinite, that asset is not amortized. We review the economic useful lives of our intangible assets at least annually.

Intangible assets consist primarily of goodwill, license agreements, trademarks, brand assets, customer lists, distribution rights, patents, and patent licenses. For certain intangible assets subject to amortization, we use the straight-line method over appropriate periods ranging from 4 to 30 years.

Warranties

We allow for warranty against defects in material and workmanship for periods ranging from two to five years. We estimate our warranty accrual using our historical experience and believe that this is the most reliable method by which we can estimate the liability. The following table summarizes the activity in our accrual for the past two fiscal years:

ACCRUAL FOR WARRANTY RETURNS

| | Fiscal Years Ended | | | | | | |
|---|--------------------|-----------|----------|--|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 | 2017 | | | | |
| Beginning balance | \$ | 20,517 \$ | 19,418 | | | | |
| Additions to the accrual | | 48,414 | 46,980 | | | | |
| Reductions of the accrual - payments and credits issued | | (46,486) | (45,881) | | | | |
| Ending balance | \$ | 22,445 \$ | 20,517 | | | | |

Financial instruments

The carrying amounts of cash and cash equivalents, receivables, accounts payable, accrued expenses, and income taxes payable approximate fair value because of the short maturity of these items. See Note 16 to these consolidated financial statements for our assessment of the fair value of our long-term debt.

Income taxes and uncertain tax positions

The provision for income tax expense is calculated on reported income before income taxes based on current tax law and includes, in the current period, the cumulative effect of any changes in tax rates from those used previously in determining deferred tax assets and liabilities. Tax laws may require items to be included in the determination of taxable income at different times from when the items are reflected in the financial statements. Deferred tax balances reflect the effects of temporary differences between the financial statement carrying amounts of assets and liabilities and their tax bases, as well as from net operating losses and tax credit carryforwards, and are stated at enacted tax rates in effect for the year taxes are expected to be paid or recovered.

Deferred tax assets represent tax benefits for tax deductions or credits available in future years and require certain estimates and assumptions to determine whether it is more likely than not that all or a portion of the benefit will not be realized. The recoverability of these future tax deductions and credits is determined by assessing the adequacy of future expected taxable income from all sources, including the future reversal of existing taxable temporary differences, taxable income in carryback years, estimated future taxable income and available tax planning strategies. Should a change in facts or circumstances lead to a change in judgment about the ultimate recoverability of a deferred tax asset, we record or adjust the related valuation allowance in the period that the change in facts and circumstances occurs, along with a corresponding increase or decrease in income tax expense.

We record tax benefits for uncertain tax positions based upon management's evaluation of the information available at the reporting date. To be recognized in the financial statements, the tax position must meet the more-likely-than-not threshold that the position will be sustained upon examination by the tax authority based on technical merits assuming the tax authority has full knowledge of all relevant information. For positions meeting this recognition threshold, the benefit is measured as the largest amount of benefit that meets the more-likely-than-not threshold to be sustained. We periodically evaluate these tax positions based on the latest available information. For tax positions that do not meet the threshold requirement, we record liabilities for unrecognized tax benefits as a tax expense or benefit in the period recognized or reversed and disclose as a separate liability in our financial statements, including related accrued interest and penalties.

Revenue recognition

Sales are recognized when revenue is realized or realizable and has been earned. Sales and shipping terms vary among our customers, and as such, revenue is recognized when risk and title to the product transfer to the customer. Net sales revenue is comprised of gross revenues less estimates of expected returns, trade discounts and customer allowances, which include incentives such as advertising discounts, volume rebates and off-invoice markdowns. Such deductions are recorded during the period

the related revenue is recognized. Sales and value added taxes collected from customers and remitted to governmental authorities are excluded from net sales revenue reported in the consolidated financial statements.

Consideration granted to customers

We offer our customers certain incentives in the form of volume rebates, product markdown allowances, trade discounts, cash discounts, slotting fees, and other similar arrangements. These programs are generally recorded as reductions of net sales revenue. In instances where the customer provides us with proof of advertising performance, reductions in amounts received from customers under cooperative advertising programs are expensed in our consolidated statements of income in SG&A. Customer cooperative advertising incentives included in SG&A were \$19.9, \$18.4 and \$19.4 million for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Advertising

Advertising costs include cooperative advertising discussed above, traditional and digital media advertising and production expenses, and expenses associated with other promotional product messaging and consumer awareness programs. Advertising costs are expensed in the period in which they are incurred and included in our consolidated statements of income in SG&A. We incurred total advertising costs, including amounts paid to customers for cooperative media and print advertising, of \$61.4, \$57.7 and \$54.2 million during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Research and development expense

Expenditures for research activities relating to product design, development and improvement are charged to expense as incurred and included in our consolidated statements of income in SG&A. We incurred total research and development expenses of \$13.5, \$11.8 and \$11.6 million during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Shipping and handling revenue and expense

Shipping and handling revenue and expense are included in our consolidated statements of income in SG&A. This includes distribution center costs, third-party logistics costs and outbound transportation costs we incur. Our net expense for shipping and handling was \$78.1, \$79.4 and \$82.4 million during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Share-based compensation plans

We account for share-based employee compensation plans under the fair value recognition and measurement provisions in accordance with applicable accounting standards, which require all share-based payments to employees, including grants of stock options, restricted stock awards ("RSAs"), restricted stock units ("RSUs"), and performance stock units ("PSUs"), to be measured based on the grant date fair value of the awards. The resulting expense is recognized over the periods during which the employee is required to perform service in exchange for the award. The estimated number of PSU's that will ultimately vest requires judgment, and to the extent actual results or updated estimates differ from our current estimates, such amounts will be recorded as a cumulative adjustment in the period estimates are revised. All share-based compensation expense is recorded net of forfeitures in our consolidated statements of income.

Stock options are recognized in the financial statements based on their fair values using an option-pricing model at the date of grant. We use a Black-Scholes option-pricing model to calculate the fair

value of options. This model requires various judgmental assumptions including volatility, forfeiture rates and expected option life.

See Note 10 to these consolidated financial statements for more information on our share-based compensation plans.

Note 2 - New Accounting Pronouncements

Not Yet Adopted

In February 2018, the FASB issued ASU No. 2018-02, *Reclassification of Certain Tax Effects from Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Topic 220)*. The amendments in ASU 2018-02 allow a reclassification from accumulated other comprehensive income to retained earnings for stranded tax effects resulting from the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act of 2017. The amendments in this ASU also require certain disclosures about stranded tax effects. The ASU will be effective for us on March 1, 2019. Early adoption in any period is permitted. We are currently evaluating the impact this guidance may have on our consolidated financial statements.

In August 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-12, *Derivatives and Hedging –Targeted Improvements to Accounting for Hedging Activities (Topic 815)*, which amends and simplifies hedge accounting with the intent of better aligning financial reporting for hedging relationships with an entity's risk management activities. The ASU is effective for us on March 1, 2019. We are currently evaluating the impact this guidance may have on our consolidated financial statements.

In May 2017, the FASB issued ASU 2017-09, *Compensation – Stock Compensation (Topic 718): Scope of Modification Accounting (Topic 718).* This update amends the scope of modification accounting surrounding share-based payment arrangements as issued in ASU 2016-09 by providing guidance on the various types of changes which would trigger modification accounting for share-based payment awards. ASU 2017-09 is effective for us on March 1, 2018. We have concluded that the adoption of this guidance will not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In October 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-16, *Accounting for Income Taxes: Intra–Entity Asset Transfers of Assets Other Than Inventory (Topic 740).* ASU 2016-16 amends accounting guidance for intra-entity transfers of assets other than inventory to require the recognition of taxes when the transfer occurs. The amendment will be effective for us on March 1 2018. A modified retrospective approach will be required for transition to the new guidance, with a cumulative-effect adjustment consisting of the net impact from (1) the write-off of any unamortized expense previously deferred and (2) recognition of any previously unrecognized deferred tax assets, net of any valuation allowance. The new guidance does not include any specific new disclosure requirements. We have concluded that the adoption of this guidance will not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

In February 2016, the FASB issued ASU 2016-02, *Leases (Topic 842) and updated in February 2018.* ASU 2016-02 will require lessees to recognize on their balance sheets "right-of-use assets" and corresponding lease liabilities, measured on a discounted basis over the lease term. Virtually all leases will be subject to this treatment except leases that meet the definition of a "short-term lease." For expense recognition, the dual model requiring leases to be classified as either operating or finance leases has been retained from the prior standard. Operating leases will result in straight-line expense while finance leases will result in a front-loaded expense pattern. Classification will use criteria very similar to those applied in current lease accounting, but without explicit bright lines. The new lease guidance will essentially eliminate off-balance sheet financing. The guidance is effective for us on March 1, 2019. The new standard must be adopted using a modified retrospective transition and requires the new guidance to be applied at the beginning of the earliest comparative period presented.

We are currently evaluating the impact this guidance may have on our consolidated financial statements.

In May 2014, the FASB issued ASU 2014-09, *Revenue from Contracts with Customers (Topic 606)*. Topic 606 provides a framework for revenue recognition that replaces most existing GAAP revenue recognition guidance. The core principle of the guidance is that a company should recognize revenue to depict the transfer of promised goods or services to customers in an amount that reflects the consideration to which the entity expects to be entitled in exchange for those goods or services. The guidance is effective for us on March 1, 2018, and we elected to adopt the standard using the retrospective method. Our revenue is primarily generated from the sale of non-customized consumer products to customers. Each product represents a performance obligation that is satisfied at a single point in time control transfers, which is generally when we ship the product. The timing and amount of revenue recognized will not be impacted by the new standard. We have thus concluded that the standard will not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements. The provisions of the new standard will, however, impact the classification of certain consideration paid to our customers. We therefore expect to reclassify an immaterial amount of such payments from SG&A to a reduction of net sales revenue. The impact would reduce net sales by approximately 1%. The standard also requires new quantitative and qualitative disclosures about revenue and costs to obtain or fulfill a contract.

There have been no other accounting pronouncements issued but not yet adopted which are expected to have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

Adopted

In January 2017, the FASB, issued ASU 2017-04, *Intangibles-Goodwill and Other (Topic 350): Simplifying the Test for Goodwill Impairment.* This guidance provides for a single-step quantitative test to identify and measure impairment, requiring an entity to recognize an impairment charge for the amount by which the goodwill carrying amount exceeds the reporting unit's fair value. We adopted the guidance on March 1, 2017, applying it on a prospective basis. The application of this guidance has not had a material impact on our financial statements.

Note 3 - Significant Accounting Matters

Fiscal 2018 - On December 20, 2017, we completed the divestiture of the Nutritional Supplements segment through the sale of Healthy Directions LLC and its subsidiaries to Direct Digital, LLC. We have presented the Nutritional Supplements segment in the accompanying consolidated financial statements as a discontinued operation. For more information see Note 4 to these consolidated financial statements.

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") was enacted into law. Among other changes, the Tax Act lowered the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% and established a modified territorial system requiring mandatory deemed repatriation tax on undistributed earnings of certain foreign subsidiaries. The rate change is effective at the beginning of calendar year 2018 and, as a result, we have a blended U.S. federal statutory tax rate of 32.7% for fiscal 2018. As a result of the enactment, we have recorded a provisional tax expense of \$17.9 million related to the one-time remeasurement of our U.S. deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse in the future, the one-time repatriation tax applied to our undistributed foreign earnings, and the impact of executive compensation that is no longer deductible under the Tax Act. On an ongoing basis, we expect that the Tax Act will result in a reduction to our annual effective tax rate of approximately one percentage point, primarily due to the reduction in the U.S. corporate income tax rate. For more information see Note 21 to these consolidated financial statements.

Fiscal 2017 – There were no significant accounting matters for fiscal 2017.

Fiscal 2016 - During fiscal 2016, as a result of a devaluation of the Venezuelan official rate, continued economic instability from declines in oil prices and the declaration of an economic emergency, among other factors, we discontinued the use of the official exchange rate and adopted a market-based exchange rate for the remeasurement of our Venezuelan financial statements. As a result, we recorded a charge of \$9.57 million (before and after tax) from the re-measurement of our Venezuelan monetary assets and liabilities at February 29, 2016 at the new rate. In addition to re-measuring our monetary holdings in Venezuela, we recorded \$9.16 million of non-cash impairment charges (before and after tax) with respect to inventory and property and equipment in order to reflect their respective estimated net realizable and fair values as of February 29, 2016.

The following table summarizes the financial impact of these adjustments:

IMPACT OF VENEZUELAN RE-MEASURMENT RELATED CHARGES

| | Balance at February 29, 2016 | | | | | | | | |
|--|------------------------------|---------------------|----|-----------|---------------------|-------|--|--|--|
| in thousands) | | Before ljustment | Ad | justments | After Adjustment | | Location of Income Statement Impact | | |
| Cash and cash equivalents | \$ | 1,302 | \$ | (1,292) | \$ | 10 | SG&A | | |
| Other net assets, principally working capital other than | | | | | | | | | |
| inventory | | 8,120 | | (8,284) | | (164) | SG&A | | |
| Inventory | | 9,378 | | (9,078) | | 300 | Cost of goods sold | | |
| Property and equipment, net | | 82 | | (79) | | 3 | SG&A | | |
| Net investment in Venezuelan operations | \$ | 18,882 | \$ | (18,733) | \$ | 149 | | | |

Note 4 - Discontinued Operations

On December 20, 2017, we completed the divestiture of the Nutritional Supplements segment through the sale of Healthy Directions LLC and its subsidiaries to Direct Digital, LLC. The Nutritional Supplements segment sold premium branded doctor formulated nutritional supplements, skincare and pain relief products through highly targeted catalog and other printed collateral mailings, online and direct response print, radio and television media.

The purchase price from the sale is comprised of \$46.0 million in cash, paid at closing, and a supplemental payment with a target value of \$25.0 million, payable on or before August 1, 2019. The final amount of the supplemental payment may be adjusted up or down based on the performance of Healthy Directions through February 28, 2018. In conjunction with the sale of the business, we have agreed to provide certain transition services for up to an eighteen-month period following the closing of the transaction.

The balance sheets associated with discontinued operations are presented below:

| (in thousands) | February 28, 2018 | | | | |
|--|----------------------|----|---------|--|--|
| Assets | | | | | |
| Receivables | \$ - | \$ | 512 | | |
| Inventory | - | | 8,245 | | |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets | - | | 2,031 | | |
| Property and equipment, net | - | | 8,433 | | |
| Goodwill | - | | 96,609 | | |
| Other intangible assets, net | - | | 83,485 | | |
| Other assets, net | - | | 599 | | |
| Assets of discontinued operations | \$ - | \$ | 199,914 | | |
| | | | | | |
| Liabilities | | | | | |
| Accounts payable, principally trade | - | | 6,111 | | |
| Accrued expenses and other current liabilities (1) | - | | 5,862 | | |
| Other liabilities, noncurrent | - | | 4,319 | | |
| Liabilities of discontinued operations | \$ - | \$ | 16,292 | | |

The results of operations associated with discontinued operations are presented in the following table:

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | | | | |
|--|--|-------------|------------|---------|--|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 (2) | 2017 | 2016 | | | | |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 99,013 \$ | 130,543 \$ | 153,126 | | | | |
| Cost of goods sold | | 28,744 | 37,632 | 42,855 | | | | |
| Gross profit | | 70,269 | 92,911 | 110,271 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Selling, general and administrative expense ("SG&A") | | 72,419 | 88,742 | 95,950 | | | | |
| Asset impairment charges (3) | | 132,297 | 9,500 | - | | | | |
| Restructuring charges | | 621 | - | - | | | | |
| Operating income (loss) | | (135,068) | (5,331) | 14,321 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Gain on sale before income tax | | 1,624 | - | - | | | | |
| Interest expense | | (367) | (497) | (515) | | | | |
| Income (loss) before income tax | | (133,811) | (5,828) | 13,806 | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| Income tax benefit (expense) | | 49,375 | 2,207 | (5,569) | | | | |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations | \$ | (84,436) \$ | (3,621) \$ | 8,237 | | | | |

- (1) Includes cash overdrafts.
- (2) Includes approximately 9.6 months of operating results prior to the divestiture on December 20, 2017.
- (3) Includes goodwill impairment charges of \$96.6 million and trademark impairment charges of \$35.7 million during fiscal 2018 and trademark impairment charges of \$9.5 million during fiscal 2017. Total after tax asset impairment charges were \$83.5 million for fiscal 2018 and \$5.9 million for fiscal 2017.

Note 5 – Property and Equipment

A summary of property and equipment is as follows:

PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

| (in thousands) | Estimated Useful Lives (Years) | Fel | bruary 28, 2018 | February 28, 2017 | |
|---|--------------------------------------|-----|--------------------|----------------------|-----------|
| Land | - | \$ | 12,800 | \$ | 12,800 |
| Building and improvements | 3 - 40 | | 106,870 | | 106,648 |
| Computer, furniture and other equipment | 3 - 15 | | 79,657 | | 72,444 |
| Tools, molds and other production equipment | 1 - 10 | | 33,466 | | 31,157 |
| Construction in progress | - | | 5,912 | | 5,606 |
| Property and equipment, gross | | | 238,705 | | 228,655 |
| Less accumulated depreciation | | | (115,202) | | (102,153) |
| Property and equipment, net | | \$ | 123,503 | \$ | 126,502 |

We recorded \$14.9, \$14.2 and \$13.4 million of depreciation expense including \$3.7, \$4.6 and \$4.3 million in cost of goods sold and \$11.2, \$9.6 and \$9.1 million in SG&A in the consolidated statements of income for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

We lease certain facilities, equipment, and vehicles under operating leases, which expire at various dates through fiscal 2033. Certain of the leases contain escalation clauses and renewal or purchase options in addition to rent abatement amounts. Rent expense related to our operating leases was \$5.5, \$5.3, and \$5.1 million for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

Note 6 - Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities

A summary of accrued expenses and other current liabilities is as follows:

ACCRUED EXPENSES AND OTHER CURRENT LIABILITIES

| | Fel | oruary 28, | Fe | ebruary 28, |
|--|-----|------------|----|-------------|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 | | 2017 |
| Accrued compensation, benefits and payroll taxes | \$ | 37,666 | \$ | 34,917 |
| Accrued sales discounts and allowances | | 28,311 | | 26,867 |
| Accrued warranty returns | | 22,445 | | 20,517 |
| Accrued advertising | | 25,324 | | 23,747 |
| Accrued legal fees and settlements | | 17,243 | | 16,908 |
| Other | | 34,875 | | 25,142 |
| Total accrued expenses and other current liabilities | \$ | 165,864 | \$ | 148,098 |

Note 7 - Other Liabilities, Noncurrent

A summary of other noncurrent liabilities is as follows:

OTHER LIABILITIES, NONCURRENT

| (in thousands) | February 28, 2018 | F | ebruary 28, 2017 |
|---------------------------------------|----------------------|----|---------------------|
| Deferred compensation liability | \$ 6,736 | \$ | 6,560 |
| Liability for uncertain tax positions | 3,349 | | 6,611 |
| Other liabilities | 4,606 | | 4,171 |
| Total other liabilities, noncurrent | \$ 14,691 | \$ | 17,342 |

Note 8 – Hydro Flask Acquisition

On March 18, 2016, we completed the acquisition of all membership units of Steel Technology, LLC, doing business as Hydro Flask. Hydro Flask is a leading designer, distributor and marketer of high performance insulated stainless steel food and beverage containers for active lifestyles. The aggregate purchase price for the transaction was approximately \$209.3 million, net of cash acquired. Significant assets acquired include receivables, inventory, prepaid expenses, property and equipment, trade names, technology assets, customer relationships, and goodwill. Acquisition-related expenses, incurred during fiscal 2016, were approximately \$0.7 million (before and after tax).

We accounted for the acquisition as the purchase of a business and recorded the excess purchase price as goodwill, which is not expected to be deductible for income tax purposes. We completed our analysis of the economic lives of the assets acquired and determined the appropriate fair values of the acquired assets. We assigned \$59.0 million to trade names with indefinite economic lives. We assigned \$10.3 million to technology assets and \$14.2 million to customer relationships and are amortizing these assets over expected lives of 10 and 24 years, respectively. For technology assets, we considered the average life cycle of the underlying products, which range from 7 - 15 years, and the overall average life of the associated patent portfolio. For the customer relationships, we used historical attrition rates to assign an expected life.

The following schedule presents the net assets of Hydro Flask recorded at acquisition, excluding cash acquired:

HYDRO FLASK – NET ASSETS RECORDED UPON ACQUISITION AT MARCH 18, 2016 (in thousands)

| (iii tiiousanus) | |
|---|---------------|
| Assets: | |
| Receivables | \$ 7,955 |
| Inventory | 6,243 |
| Prepaid expenses and other current assets | 336 |
| Property and equipment | 1,108 |
| Goodwill | 116,053 |
| Trade names - indefinite | 59,000 |
| Technology assets - definite | 10,300 |
| Customer relationships - definite | 14,200 |
| Subtotal - assets | 215,195 |
| Liabilities: | |
| Accounts payable | 2,275 |
| Accrued expenses | 3,662 |
| Subtotal - liabilities | 5,937 |
| Net assets recorded | \$ 209,258 |

The fair values of the above assets acquired and liabilities assumed were estimated by applying income and market approaches. Key assumptions include various discount rates based upon a 12.3% weighted average cost of capital; royalty rates used in the determination of trade names and technology asset values of 6% and 2%, respectively; and a customer attrition rate used in the determination of customer relationship values of approximately 4% per year.

The impact of the Hydro Flask acquisition on our consolidated statements of income for fiscal 2017 is as follows:

HYDRO FLASK - IMPACT ON CONSOLIDATED STATEMENT OF INCOME

| March 18, 2016 (acquisition date) through February 28, 2017 | | Fiscal Year Ended | | | | |
|---|--------|----------------------|--|--|--|--|
| (in thousands, except earnings per share data) | Februa | February 28, 2017 | | | | |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 107,005 | | | | |
| Net income | | 27,902 | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Earnings per share: | | | | | | |
| Basic | \$ | 1.01 | | | | |
| Diluted | \$ | 1.00 | | | | |

The following supplemental unaudited pro forma information presents our financial results as if the Hydro Flask acquisition had occurred as of the beginning of the fiscal periods presented. This supplemental pro forma information has been prepared for comparative purposes and would not necessarily indicate what may have occurred if the acquisition had been completed on March 1, 2015, and this information is not intended to be indicative of future results.

HYDRO FLASK - PRO FORMA IMPACT ON CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF INCOME (unaudited)

| As if the acquisition had been completed at the beginning of March 1, 2015 | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of Februar | | | | | | |
|--|--|-----------|----|-----------|--|--|--|
| (in thousands, except earnings per share data) | | 2017 | | 2016 | | | |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 1,410,171 | \$ | 1,450,530 | | | |
| Net income | | 144,947 | | 105,669 | | | |
| Earnings per share: | | | | | | | |
| Basic | \$ | 5.27 | \$ | 3.74 | | | |
| Diluted | \$ | 5.20 | \$ | 3.68 | | | |

Note 9 - Goodwill and Intangibles

We do not record amortization expense for goodwill or other intangible assets that have indefinite useful lives. Amortization expense is recorded for intangible assets with definite useful lives. Some of our goodwill is held in jurisdictions that allow deductions for tax purposes, however, in some of those jurisdictions we have no tax basis for the associated goodwill recorded for book purposes. Accordingly, the majority of our goodwill is not deductible for tax purposes. We perform annual impairment testing each fiscal year and interim impairment testing, if necessary. We write down any asset deemed to be impaired to its fair value.

Our impairment test methodology uses primarily estimated future discounted cash flow models ("DCF Models"). The DCF Models use a number of assumptions including expected future cash flows from the assets, volatility, risk free rate, and the expected life of the assets, the determination of which require significant judgments from management. In determining the assumptions to be used, we consider the existing rates on Treasury Bills, yield spreads on assets with comparable expected lives, historical volatility of our common stock and that of comparable companies, and general economic and industry trends, among other considerations. When stock market or other conditions warrant, we expand our traditional impairment test methodology to give weight to other methods that provide additional observable market information in order to better reflect the current risk level being incorporated into market prices and in order to corroborate the fair values of each of our reporting units. Management will place increased reliance on these additional methods in conjunction with its DCF Models in the event that the total market capitalization of its stock drops below its consolidated stockholders' equity balance for a sustained period.

Table of Contents

Considerable management judgment is necessary in reaching a conclusion regarding the reasonableness of fair value estimates, evaluating the most likely impact of a range of possible external conditions, considering the resulting operating changes and their impact on estimated future cash flows, determining the appropriate discount factors to use, and selecting and weighting appropriate comparable market level inputs.

Impairment Testing in Fiscal 2018 - As a result of our annual and interim testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges totaling \$15.4 million (\$13.8 million after tax) during fiscal 2018. The charges were related to trademarks in our Beauty segment, which were written down to their estimated fair values, determined on the basis of our estimated future discounted cash flows using the relief from royalty valuation method.

The fair values used in our impairment tests were determined using a weighted average of various valuation methods including estimated future discounted cash flows and other market data. The valuation techniques utilized assumptions we believed to be appropriate in the circumstances; however, future circumstances attributable to a strategic change in our business could result in changes to those assumptions and other charges or losses relating our segments may be recorded and could be material. We are unable to project the amount of any expense, charge or loss that may be incurred in future periods.

Impairment Testing in Fiscal 2017 - As a result of our testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash asset impairment charges of \$2.9 million (\$2.5 million after tax) during fiscal 2017. The charges were related to trademarks in our Beauty segment, which were written down to their estimated fair values, determined on the basis of our estimated future discounted cash flows using the relief from royalty valuation method.

Impairment Testing in Fiscal 2016 - As a result of our testing of indefinite-lived trademarks, we recorded non-cash impairment charges of \$6.0 million (\$5.3 million after tax) during fiscal 2016. The charges were related to certain trademarks in our Beauty segment, which were written down to fair value, determined on the basis of future discounted cash flows using the relief from royalty valuation method.

The following tables summarize the changes in our goodwill and intangible assets by segment for fiscal 2018 and 2017:

GOODWILL AND INTANGIBLE ASSETS

| | Weighted | | nces at ry 28, 2017 | Year | r Ended Februa | ry 28, 2018 | | Balan February | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|----------------|----------------|--|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| (in thousands) | Average Life (Years) | Gross Carrying Amount | Cumulative Goodwill Impairments | Additions | Impairments | Acquisition and Retirement Adjustments | Gross Carrying Amount | Cumulative Goodwill Impairments | Accumulated Amortization | Net Book Value |
| Housewares: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Goodwill | | \$ 282,056 | \$ - | \$ - | \$ - | \$ - | \$ 282,056 | \$ - | \$ - | \$ 282,056 |
| Trademarks - indefinite | | 134,200 | - | - | - | - | 134,200 | - | - | 134,200 |
| Other intangibles - finite | 10.7 | 40,393 | - | 607 | | (173) | 40,828 | - | (17,530) | 23,298 |
| Subtotal | | 456,649 | - | 607 | - | (173) | 457,084 | _ | (17,530) | 439,554 |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Health & Home: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Goodwill | | 284,913 | - | - | - | - | 284,913 | - | - | 284,913 |
| Trademarks - indefinite | | 54,000 | - | - | - | - | 54,000 | - | - | 54,000 |
| Licenses - finite | | 15,300 | - | - | - | - | 15,300 | - | (15,300) | |
| Licenses - indefinite | | 7,400 | - | - | - | - | 7,400 | - | - | 7,400 |
| Other Intangibles - finite | 4.0 | 116,982 | - | 605 | - | | 117,586 | - | (77,128) | 40,458 |
| Subtotal | | 478,595 | - | 605 | - | - | 479,199 | - | (92,428) | 386,771 |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Beauty: | | | | | | | | | | |
| Goodwill | | 81,841 | (46,490) | - | - | - | 81,841 | (46,490) | - | 35,351 |
| Trademarks - indefinite | | 45,854 | - | - | (15,447) | - | 30,407 | - | - | 30,407 |
| Trademarks - finite | 10.6 | 150 | - | - | - | - | 150 | - | (97) | 53 |
| Licenses - indefinite | | 10,300 | - | - | - | - | 10,300 | - | - | 10,300 |
| Licenses - finite | 4.8 | 13,696 | - | - | - | - | 13,696 | - | (12,166) | 1,530 |
| Other intangibles - finite | 0.2 | 46,402 | - | - | - | - | 46,402 | - | (45,133) | 1,269 |
| Subtotal | | 198,243 | (46,490) | - | (15,447) | - | 182,796 | (46,490) | (57,396) | 78,910 |
| Total | | £ 4 422 407 | ¢ (40,400) | \$ 1.212 | ¢ (45.447) | \$ (173) | \$ 1.119.079 | ¢ (40.400) | ¢ (467.254) | \$ 905,235 |
| าบเลา | | \$ 1,133,487 | \$ (46,490) | ⊅ 1,212 | \$ (15,447) | a (173) | a 1,119,079 | \$ (46,490) | a (167,354) | a 905,235 |

| | Weighted | | r Ended ry 29, 2016 | Year | Year Ended February 28, 2017 | | | | Year Ended February 28, 2017 | | | | |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|------------|------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------|--|--|
| (in thousands) | Average Life (Years) | Gross Carrying Amount | Cumulative Goodwill Impairments | Additions | Impairments | and Re | isition tirement tments | Gross Carrying Amount | Cumulative Goodwill Impairments | Accumulated Amortization | Net Book Value | | |
| Housewares: | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Goodwill | | \$ 166,132 | \$ - | \$ 116,053 | \$ - | \$ | (129) | \$ 282,056 | \$ - | \$ - | \$ 282,056 | | |
| Trademarks - indefinite | | 75,200 | - | 59,000 | - | | - | 134,200 | - | - | 134,200 | | |
| Other intangibles - finite | 11.6 | 15,448 | - | 25,040 | - | | (95) | 40,393 | - | (15,476) | 24,917 | | |
| Subtotal | | 256,780 | - | 200,093 | - | | (224) | 456,649 | - | (15,476) | 441,173 | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Health & Home: | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Goodwill | | 284,913 | - | - | - | | - | 284,913 | - | - | 284,913 | | |
| Trademarks - indefinite | | 54,000 | - | - | - | | - | 54,000 | - | - | 54,000 | | |
| Licenses - finite | | 15,300 | - | - | - | | - | 15,300 | - | (15,300) | - | | |
| Licenses - indefinite | | 7,400 | - | - | - | | - | 7,400 | - | - | 7,400 | | |
| Other Intangibles - finite | 5.0 | 116,575 | - | 472 | - | | (65) | 116,982 | - | (66,027) | 50,955 | | |
| Subtotal | | 478,188 | - | 472 | - | | (65) | 478,595 | - | (81,327) | 397,268 | | |
| Decutu | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Beauty: Goodwill | | 81,841 | (46,490) | _ | _ | | _ | 81.841 | (46,490) | | 35,351 | | |
| Trademarks - indefinite | | 48,754 | (40,430) | - : | (2,900) | | | 45,854 | (40,430) | - | 45,854 | | |
| Trademarks - finite | 11.6 | 150 | | | (2,900) | | | 150 | | (92) | 58 | | |
| Licenses - indefinite | 11.0 | 10.300 | | _ | | | | 10,300 | | (92) | 10,300 | | |
| Licenses - finite | 5.8 | 13,696 | | | | | | 13,696 | | (11,849) | 1,847 | | |
| Other intangibles - finite | 1.2 | 46,402 | _ | | _ | | - | 46,402 | _ | (39,929) | 6,473 | | |
| Subtotal | | 201,143 | (46,490) | - | (2,900) | | - | 198,243 | (46,490) | (51,870) | 99,883 | | |
| Total | | \$ 936.111 | ` ' ' | \$ 200.565 | , , | | | \$ 1.133.487 | ` ' ' | , , | | | |

The following table summarizes the amortization expense attributable to intangible assets recorded in SG&A in the consolidated statements of income for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, as well as estimated amortization expense for fiscal 2019 through 2023:

| Aggregate Amortization Expense (in thousands) | | |
|---|----------------------|------------------|
| Fiscal 2018 | \$ | 18,854 |
| Fiscal 2017 | \$ | 22,024 |
| Fiscal 2016 | \$ | 21,514 |
| Estimated Amortization Expense (in thousands) | | |
| | | |
| | \$ | 14.018 |
| Fiscal 2019 Fiscal 2020 | \$ | 14,018 12,428 |
| Fiscal 2019 | \$ \$ \$ | |
| Fiscal 2019 Fiscal 2020 | \$ \$ \$ \$ | 12,428 |

Note 10 - Share-Based Compensation Plans

We have equity awards outstanding under an expired employee stock option and restricted stock plan adopted in 1998 (the "1998 Plan"). We also have equity awards outstanding under three active share-based compensation plans. The plans consist of the Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Stock Incentive Plan, an employee stock plan (the "2008 Stock Incentive Plan"), the Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Non-Employee Directors Stock Incentive Plan, a non-employee director restricted stock plan (the "2008 Directors' Plan"), and the Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "2008 Stock Purchase Plan"). These plans are described below. The plans are administered by the Compensation Committee of the Board of Directors, which consists of non-employee directors who are independent under the applicable listing standards for companies traded on the NASDAQ Stock Market LLC.

Expired Plan

The 1998 Plan – The plan covered a total of 6,750,000 shares of common stock for issuance to key officers and employees. The 1998 Plan provided for the grant of options to purchase our common stock at a price equal to or greater than the fair market value on the grant date. The 1998 Plan contained provisions for incentive stock options, non-qualified stock options and restricted share grants. Generally, options granted under the 1998 Plan become exercisable over four- or five-year vesting periods and expire on dates ranging from seven to ten years from the date of grant. The 1998 Plan expired by its terms on August 25, 2008. As of February 28, 2018, there were 1,200 shares of common stock subject to options outstanding under the plan.

Active Plans

The 2008 Stock Incentive Plan – The plan covers a total of 3,750,000 shares of common stock for issuance to key officers, employees and consultants of our Company. Under this plan, we offer stock-based compensation that includes stock options, annual restricted share awards, time-vested restricted stock units and performance-based restricted stock units. The plan will expire by its terms on August 19, 2018.

- Stock Options: Generally, options granted under the 2008 Stock Incentive Plan will become
 exercisable over four- or five-year vesting periods and will expire on dates ranging from seven to
 ten years from the date of grant. These stock options are expensed ratably over their vesting
 terms. As of February 28, 2018, there were 298,602 shares of common stock subject to options
 outstanding under the plan.
- Restricted Stock Awards ("RSAs"): During fiscal 2016, we issued an RSA that immediately vested for 2,000 shares of common stock to our current CEO at a fair value of \$89.12 per share.

- Restricted Stock Units ("RSUs"): RSUs are awards of time-vested restricted stock units that are independent of stock option grants and are generally subject to forfeiture if employment terminates prior to vesting. During fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, we granted RSUs that may be settled for up to 82,356, 92,329 and 29,932 shares of common stock, with weighted average grant date fair values of \$95.36, \$96.74 and \$76.62, respectively, to the CEO and certain members of the management team. The awards vest over varying terms up to 4 years. We expense the cost of restricted stock units ratably over their vesting periods.
- Performance Restricted Stock Units ("PSUs"): PSUs are performance-based restricted stock unit awards that represent the right to receive unrestricted shares of stock based on the achievement of our performance goals over the performance period established by the Compensation Committee of our Board of Directors. During fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, we granted PSUs that may be settled for up to 140,658, 139,846 and 130,608 shares of common stock with average fair values at the grant date of \$96.52, \$97.12 and \$76.62, respectively, to the CEO and certain members of the management team. These awards have three year performance periods ending on the last day of fiscal 2020, 2019 and 2018, respectively. The awards will vest and settle on the date the Compensation Committee certifies that the performance goals have been achieved. Expense for the new plan must be estimated until earned, subject to a probability assessment of achieving the various performance goals and payout levels.

A summary of shares available for issue under the 2008 stock incentive plan follows:

| Shares originally authorized | 3,750,000 |
|--|-------------|
| Less cumulative stock option grants issued, net of forfeitures | (1,160,556) |
| Less restricted share awards previously vested and settled | (638,565) |
| Subtotal | 1,950,879 |
| Less maximum RSUs issuable upon vesting (1) | (136,253) |
| Less maximum PSUs issuable upon vesting (1) | (348,126) |
| Shares available for issuance | 1,466,500 |

(1) RSUs and PSUs potentially issuable are estimated assuming the maximum payouts adjusted for actual forfeitures to date.

The 2008 Directors' Plan – The plan covers a total of 175,000 shares of common stock for issuance of restricted stock, restricted stock units or other stock-based awards to non-employee members of our Board of Directors. Awards granted under the 2008 Directors' Plan will be subject to vesting schedules and other terms and conditions as determined by the Compensation Committee of our Board of Directors. The plan will expire by its terms on August 19, 2018. As of February 28, 2018, 84,483 shares of restricted stock have been granted and 90,517 shares remained available for future issue under the plan. Under the 2008 Directors' Plan for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, we granted 5,658, 5,285 and 5,649 shares of restricted stock, respectively, to certain members of our Board of Directors having weighted average fair values at the date of grant of \$92.95, \$92.98 and \$87.04 per share for each year, respectively. The restricted stock awards vested immediately, were valued at the fair value of our common stock at the date of the grant, and accordingly, were expensed at the time of the grants.

The 2008 Stock Purchase Plan – The plan covers a total of 350,000 shares of common stock for issuance to our employees. Under the terms of the plan, employees may authorize the withholding of up to 15% of their wages or salaries to purchase our shares of common stock. The purchase price for shares acquired under the 2008 Stock Purchase Plan is equal to the lower of 85% of the share's fair market value on either the first day of each option period or the last day of each period. The plan will expire by its terms on September 1, 2018. Shares of common stock purchased under the 2008 Stock Purchase Plan vest immediately at the time of purchase. Accordingly, the fair value award associated with their discounted purchase price is expensed at the time of purchase. During fiscal 2018, 2017 and

2016, plan participants acquired a total of 16,098, 32,110 and 28,433 shares of common stock at average prices of \$76.76, \$76.77 and \$67.77 per share, respectively. As of February 28, 2018, there were 50,444 shares available for future issue under the plan.

We recorded share-based compensation expense in SG&A as follows:

SHARE-BASED PAYMENT EXPENSE

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | | | | |
|--|--|---------|----|---------|------|-------|--|--|
| (in thousands, except per share data) | 2018 | | | 2017 | 2016 | | | |
| Stock options | \$ | 1,634 | \$ | 2,614 | \$ | 2,863 | | |
| Directors stock compensation | | 750 | | 700 | | 700 | | |
| Performance based and other stock awards | | 12,631 | | 10,243 | | 3,235 | | |
| Employee stock purchase plan | | 264 | | 490 | | 552 | | |
| Share-based compensation expense | | 15,279 | | 14,047 | | 7,350 | | |
| Less income tax benefits | | (1,669) | | (1,762) | | (753 | | |
| Share-based compensation expense, net of income tax benefits | \$ | 13,610 | \$ | 12,285 | \$ | 6,597 | | |
| Continuing operations earnings per share impact of share-based | | | | | | | | |
| compensation expense: | | | | | | | | |
| Basic | \$ | 0.50 | \$ | 0.45 | \$ | 0.23 | | |
| Diluted | \$ | 0.50 | \$ | 0.44 | \$ | 0.23 | | |

A summary of our total unrecognized share-based compensation expense as of February 28, 2018 is as follows:

UNRECOGNIZED SHARE-BASED COMPENSATION EXPENSE

| | | | Weighted |
|---|----|--------------|-------------|
| | | | Average |
| | U | Inrecognized | Period of |
| | С | ompensation | Recognition |
| (in thousands, except weighted average expense period data) | | Expense | (in months) |
| Stock options | \$ | 1,384 | 16.9 |
| Restricted stock units (RSUs and PSUs) | | 12,220 | 23.8 |

There were no options granted during fiscal 2018. The fair value of our stock option grants are estimated using a Black-Scholes option pricing model with the following assumptions for fiscal years 2017 and 2016:

ASSUMPTIONS USED FOR FAIR VALUE OF STOCK OPTION GRANTS

| | Fiscal Years Ended | I the Last Day of February, |
|---|--------------------|-----------------------------|
| | 2017 | 2016 |
| Range of risk free interest rates used | 1.2% | 0.9% - 1.5% |
| Expected dividend rate | -% | -% |
| Weighted average volatility rate | 33.4% | 39.1% |
| Range of expected volatility rates used | 33.4% | 35.9% - 39.7% |
| Range of expected terms used (in years) | 4.1 | 4.1 - 4.4 |

The risk-free interest rate is based on U.S. Treasury securities with maturities equal to the expected life of the stock option grants. The dividend yield is computed as zero because we have not historically paid dividends nor do we expect to do so at this time. Expected volatility is based on a weighted average of the market implied volatility and historical volatility over the expected life of the underlying stock option grants. We use our historical experience to estimate the expected term of each stock option grant.

A summary of stock option activity under all our share-based compensation plans follows:

SUMMARY OF STOCK OPTION ACTIVITY

| (in thousands, except contractual term and per share data) | Options | Weighted Average Exercise Price (per share) | Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value (per share) | Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term (in years) | Intrinsic Value |
|--|---------|---|--|--|--------------------|
| Outstanding at February 28, 2015 | 768 | 42.76 | 16.28 | 6.6 | 26,008 |
| Grants | 186 | 88.17 | 28.82 | | |
| Exercises | (178) | 37.86 | | | 9,480 |
| Forfeitures / expirations | (127) | 59.01 | | | |
| Outstanding at February 29, 2016 | 649 | 53.94 | 19.52 | 6.1 | 26,847 |
| Grants | 2 | 102.04 | 28.74 | | |
| Exercises | (170) | 43.07 | | | 9,152 |
| Forfeitures / expirations | (33) | 65.68 | | | |
| Outstanding at February 28, 2017 | 448 | \$ 57.41 | \$ 20.54 | 5.0 | \$ 18,097 |
| Grants | - | - | - | | |
| Exercises | (126) | 52.28 | | | 5,400 |
| Forfeitures / expirations | (22) | 72.37 | | | |
| Outstanding at February 28, 2018 | 300 | \$ 58.35 | \$ 32.04 | 4.3 | \$ 9,606 |
| Exercisable at February 28, 2018 | 175 | \$ 49.18 | \$ 41.11 | 3.9 | \$ 7,198 |

A summary of non-vested stock option activity and changes under all our share-based compensation plans follows:

NON-VESTED STOCK OPTION ACTIVITY

| (in thousands, except per share data) | Non- Vested Options | Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value (per share) |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|--|
| Outstanding at February 28, 2015 | 674 | 16.98 |
| Grants | 186 | 28.82 |
| Vested or forfeited | (339) | 17.59 |
| Outstanding at February 29, 2016 | 521 | 20.81 |
| Grants | 2 | 28.74 |
| Vested or forfeited | (243) | 18.95 |
| Outstanding at February 28, 2017 | 280 | \$ 22.48 |
| Grants | - | - |
| Vested or forfeited | (155) | 25.02 |
| Outstanding at February 28, 2018 | 125 | \$ 19.31 |

A summary of restricted stock unit activity and changes under our 2008 Stock Incentive Plan follows:

SUMMARY OF RESTRICTED STOCK UNIT ACTIVITY

| (in thousands, except per share data) | Restricted Stock Units | Weighted Average Grant Date Fair Value (per share) | Fair Value Outstanding |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------|--|---------------------------|
| Outstanding at February 28, 2015 (1) | 118 | 58.35 | 9,041 |
| Granted (1) | 95 | 76.62 | |
| Vested (2) | - | - | |
| Outstanding at February 29, 2016 | 213 | 66.50 | 20,311 |
| Granted (1) | 162 | 96.90 | |
| Vested (2) | (53) | 70.14 | |
| Outstanding at February 28, 2017 | 322 | \$ 81.19 | \$ 31,418 |
| Granted (1) | 262 | 96.44 | |
| Vested or forfeited (2) | (274) | 78.71 | |
| Outstanding at February 28, 2018 | 310 | \$ 90.05 | \$ 27,944 |

- (1) Includes target level RSUs and PSUs granted to our current CEO and members of management in connection with long-term incentive compensation for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016.
- (2) Includes 192,002 and 15,643 RSUs which vested and settled throughout the year at an weighted average fair values of \$62.88 and \$60.28 per share for fiscal 2018 and 2017, respectively. There were no RSUs vested or settled in fiscal 2016.

Note 11 - Defined Contribution Plans

We sponsor defined contribution savings plans in the U.S. and other countries where we have employees. Total company matching contributions made to these plans for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016 were \$3.9, \$3.2 and \$3.1 million, respectively.

Note 1 2 - Repurchase of Helen of Troy Common Stock

On May 10, 2017, our Board of Directors authorized the repurchase of up to \$400 million of our outstanding common stock. The authorization is effective for a period of three years and replaced our former repurchase authorization, of which approximately \$82 million remained. These repurchases may include open market purchases, privately negotiated transactions, block trades, accelerated stock repurchase transactions, or any combination of such methods. The number of shares purchased and the timing of the purchases will depend on a number of factors, including share price, trading volume and general market conditions, working capital requirements, general business conditions, financial conditions, any applicable contractual limitations, and other factors, including alternative investment opportunities. As of February 28, 2018, our repurchase authorization allowed for the purchase of \$328.0 million of common stock.

Our current equity-based compensation plans include provisions that allow for the "net exercise" of share settled awards by all plan participants. In a net exercise, any required payroll taxes, federal withholding taxes and exercise price of the shares due from the option holder can be paid for by having the option holder tender back to us a number of shares at fair value equal to the amounts due. Net exercises are treated as purchases and retirements of shares.

The following table summarizes our share repurchase activity for the periods shown:

SHARE REPURCHASES

| | | Year End | ed tl | he Last Day | of F | ebruary |
|--|----|----------|-------|-------------|------|-----------|
| (in thousands, except share and per share data) | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 |
| Common stock repurchased on the open market or through tender offer: | | | | | | |
| Number of shares | | 717,300 | | 922,731 | | 1,126,796 |
| Aggregate value of shares | \$ | 65,795 | \$ | 75,000 | \$ | 100,000 |
| Average price per share | \$ | 91.73 | \$ | 81.28 | \$ | 88.75 |
| | | | | | | |
| Common stock received in connection with share-based compensation: | | | | | | |
| Number of shares | | 75,785 | | 6,286 | | 117,294 |
| Aggregate value of shares | \$ | 7,258 | \$ | 595 | \$ | 6,411 |
| Average price per share | \$ | 95.77 | \$ | 94.61 | \$ | 54.66 |

Note 13 – Restructuring Plan

On October 5, 2017, we announced an approved restructuring plan (referred to as "Project Refuel") intended to enhance the performance primarily for the Beauty and Nutritional Supplements segments. Project Refuel includes charges for a reduction-in-force and the elimination of certain contracts. Following the divestiture of our former Nutritional Supplements segment, as discussed in Note 4 to these consolidated financial statements, we are targeting total annualized profit improvements of approximately \$8.0 million over the duration of the plan. We estimate the plan to be completed by the first quarter of fiscal 2020 and expect to incur total restructuring charges in the range of approximately \$3.2 to \$4.8 million over the same period. Restructuring provisions are determined based on estimates prepared at the time the restructuring actions are approved by management and are revised periodically. Restructuring charges also include amounts recognized as incurred.

During fiscal 2018, we incurred \$1.9 million of pre-tax restructuring costs related to employee severance and termination benefits and contract termination costs. As of February 28, 2018, we made cash restructuring payments of \$1.3 million and had a remaining liability of \$0.5 million.

Note 14 - Other Commitments and Contingencies

Indemnity Agreements – Under agreements with customers, licensors and parties from whom we have acquired assets or entered into business combinations, we indemnify these parties against liability associated with our products. Additionally, we are party to a number of agreements under leases where we indemnify the lessor for liabilities attributable to our actions or conduct. The indemnity agreements to which we are a party do not, in general, increase our liability for claims related to our products or actions and have not materially affected our consolidated financial statements.

Employment Contracts and Related Matters – We have entered into employment contracts with certain officers, including an employment agreement with Mr. Julien Mininberg, our CEO, that was amended and restated on January 7, 2016. The amended and restated agreement, among other things, extended the term of Mr. Mininberg's employment agreement from March 1, 2016 through February 28, 2019. These agreements provide for minimum salary levels, potential incentive bonuses, and in some cases, performance based awards. These agreements also specify varying levels of salary continuation and/or severance compensation dependent on certain circumstances such as involuntary termination for other than cause or involuntary termination due to a change of control.

In some cases, the expiration dates for these agreements are indefinite, unless terminated by either party. At February 28, 2018, the estimated aggregate commitment for potential future compensation and/or severance pursuant to all continuing employment contracts, was approximately \$7.0 million, payable over varying terms up to two years from the date of separation.

International Trade – We purchase most of our appliances and a significant portion of other products that we sell from unaffiliated manufacturers located in the Far East, mainly in China. With most of our products being manufactured in the Far East, we are subject to risks associated with trade barriers, the imposition of additional tariffs, currency exchange fluctuations and social, economic and political unrest. In recent years, increasing labor costs, regional labor dislocations driven by new government policies, local inflation, changes in ocean cargo carrier capacity and costs, the impact of energy prices on transportation, and fluctuations in the Chinese Renminbi against the U.S. Dollar have resulted in variability in our cost of goods sold. In the past, certain Chinese suppliers have closed operations due to economic conditions that pressured their profitability. Although we have multiple sourcing partners for certain products, occasionally we are unable to source certain items on a timely basis due to changes occurring with our suppliers. We believe that we could source similar products outside China, if necessary, and we continuously explore expanding sourcing alternatives in other countries. However, the relocation of any production capacity could require substantial time and increased costs.

Customer Incentives – We regularly enter into arrangements with customers whereby we offer various incentives, including incentives in the form of volume rebates. Our estimates of the liabilities for such incentives is included in the accompanying consolidated balance sheets on the line entitled "Accrued expenses and other current liabilities," and in Note 6 to these consolidated financial statements included in the lines entitled "Accrued sales discounts and allowances" and "Accrued advertising" and are based on incentives applicable to sales occurring up to the respective balance sheet dates.

Thermometer Patent Litigation – In January 2016, a jury ruled against us in a case that involved claims by Exergen Corporation. The case involved the alleged patent infringement related to two forehead thermometer models sold by our subsidiary, Kaz USA, Inc., in the United States. As a result of the jury verdict, we recorded a charge in fiscal 2016 including legal fees and other related expenses, of \$17.8 million (before and after tax). In June 2016, certain post-trial motions were concluded with Exergen Corporation being awarded an additional \$1.5 million of pre-judgment compensation. We accrued this additional amount in May 2016. In July 2016, we appealed the judgment to the United States Court of Appeals for the Federal Circuit. In March 2018, the Federal Circuit issued a decision, which reversed the district court's verdict of infringement of one of the two patents at issue and remanded the damage award for a determination by the district court of the impact the reversal of infringement has on the damage award. We are not yet able to predict the outcome of the further district court proceedings and, therefore, have not adjusted the related reserve.

Other Matters – We are involved in various legal claims and proceedings in the normal course of operations. We believe the outcome of these matters will not have a material adverse effect on our consolidated financial position, results of operations, or liquidity.

Contractual Obligations and Commercial Commitments – Our contractual obligations and commercial commitments at the end of fiscal 2018 were:

PAYMENTS DUE BY PERIOD - TWELVE MONTHS ENDED THE LAST DAY OF FEBRUARY:

| | | 2019 | 2020 | 2021 | 2022 | 2023 | After |
|------------------------------------|------------|------------|-----------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| (in thousands) | Total | 1 year | 2 years | 3 years | 4 years | 5 years | 5 years |
| Floating rate debt | \$ 293,707 | \$ 1,900 | \$ 1,900 | \$ 1,900 | \$ 271,300 | \$ 1,900 | \$ 14,807 |
| Long-term incentive plan payouts | 11,840 | 5,412 | 4,786 | 1,642 | - | - | - |
| Interest on floating rate debt (1) | 29,011 | 7,625 | 7,569 | 7,514 | 5,873 | 429 | 1 |
| Open purchase orders | 182,603 | 182,603 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Long-term purchase commitments | 1,033 | 1,033 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Minimum royalty payments | 55,359 | 12,490 | 12,972 | 12,912 | 9,071 | 7,914 | - |
| Advertising and promotional | 39,071 | 14,304 | 6,298 | 6,411 | 6,527 | 5,531 | - |
| Operating leases | 67,685 | 6,237 | 6,270 | 6,278 | 5,851 | 4,932 | 38,117 |
| Capital spending commitments | 1,080 | 1,080 | - | - | - | - | - |
| Total contractual obligations (2) | \$ 681,389 | \$ 232,684 | \$ 39,795 | \$ 36,657 | \$ 298,622 | \$ 20,706 | \$ 52,925 |

- (1) We estimate our future obligations for interest on our floating rate debt by assuming the weighted average interest rates in effect on each floating rate debt obligation at February 28, 2018 remain constant into the future. This is an estimate, as actual rates will vary over time. In addition, for the Credit Agreement, we assume that the balance outstanding as of February 28, 2018 remains the same for the remaining term of the agreement. The actual balance outstanding under the Credit Agreement may fluctuate significantly in future periods, depending on the availability of cash flow from operations and future investing and financing considerations.
- (2) In addition to the contractual obligations and commercial commitments in the table above, as of February 28, 2018, we have recorded a provision for uncertain tax positions of \$3.3 million. We are unable to reliably estimate the timing of most of the future payments, if any, related to uncertain tax positions; therefore, we have excluded these tax liabilities from the table above.

Note 15 – Long Term Debt

We have a credit agreement (the "Credit Agreement") with Bank of America, N.A., as administrative agent, and other lenders that provides for an unsecured total revolving commitment of \$1 billion as of February 28, 2018. The commitment under the Credit Agreement terminates on December 7, 2021. Borrowings accrue interest under one of two alternative methods as described in the Credit Agreement. With each borrowing against our credit line, we can elect the interest rate method based on our funding needs at the time. We also incur loan commitment and letter of credit fees under the Credit Agreement. Outstanding letters of credit reduce the borrowing availability under the Credit Agreement on a dollar-fordollar basis. As of February 28, 2018, the outstanding revolving loan principal balance was \$269.4 million and the balance of outstanding letters of credit was \$7.1. million. As of February 28, 2018, the amount available for borrowings under the Credit Agreement was \$723.5 million. Covenants in our debt agreements limit the amount of total indebtedness we can incur. As of February 28, 2018 these covenants effectively limited our ability to incur more than \$516.9 million of additional debt from all sources, including our Credit Agreement, or \$692.1 million in the event a qualified acquisition is consummated.

A summary of our long-term debt follows:

LONG-TERM DEBT

| (dollars in thousands) | Original Date Borrowed | Interest Rates | Matures | February 28, 2018 | Fe | bruary 28, 2017 |
|---|------------------------------|-------------------|---------|----------------------|----|--------------------|
| Mississippi Business Finance Corporation Loan (the "MBFC Loan") (1) | 03/13 | Floating | 03/23 | \$ 24,219 | \$ | 29,903 |
| Senior Notes (2) | 01/11 | 3.9 % | 01/18 | - | | 19,763 |
| Credit Agreement (3) | 01/15 | Floating | 12/21 | 265,650 | | 435,949 |
| Total long-term debt | | | | 289,869 | | 485,615 |
| Less current maturities of long-term debt | | | | (1,884) |) | (24,404) |
| Long-term debt, excluding current maturities | | | | \$ 287,985 | \$ | 461,211 |

- (1) The MBFC Loan is unsecured with an original balance of \$37.6 million and interest set and payable quarterly at a Base Rate, plus a margin of up to 1.0%, or applicable LIBOR plus a margin of up to 2.0%, as determined by the interest rate elected and the Leverage Ratio. The loan is subject to holder's call on or after March 1, 2018. The loan can be prepaid without penalty. The remaining loan balance is payable as follows: \$1.9 million annually on March 1, 2018 through 2022; and \$14.8 million on March 1, 2023. Any remaining outstanding principal and interest is due upon maturity on March 1, 2023.
- (2) Unsecured Senior Notes at a fixed interest rate of 3.9% were paid in full during the fourth quarter of fiscal 2018.
- (3) Floating interest rates are hedged with an interest rate swap to effectively fix interest rates on \$100 million of the outstanding principal balance under the Credit Agreement. Notes 16 and 17 to these consolidated financial statements provide additional information regarding the interest rate swap.

At February 28, 2018, our long-term debt has floating interest rates, and its book value approximates its fair value. The fair market value of the fixed rate debt at February 28, 2017 computed using a discounted cash flow analysis and comparable market rates was \$20.1 million compared to the \$19.8 million book value.

All of our debt is unconditionally guaranteed, on a joint and several basis, by the Company and certain of its subsidiaries. Our debt agreements require the maintenance of certain financial covenants, including maximum leverage ratios, minimum interest coverage ratios and minimum consolidated net worth levels (as each of these terms is defined in the various agreements). Our debt agreements also contain other customary covenants. We were in compliance with the terms of these agreements as of February 28, 2018.

The following table contains information about interest rates on our Credit Agreement and the related weighted average borrowings outstanding for the periods covered by our consolidated statements of income:

INTEREST RATES ON CREDIT AGREEMENT

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | | | |
|---|--|-------------|----|-------------|-------|-------------|--|
| (in thousands) | 2018 | | | 2017 | 7 201 | | |
| Average borrowings outstanding (1) | \$ | 382,960 | \$ | 498,420 | \$ | 399,800 | |
| Average interest rate during each year (2) | 2.7 % | | | 2.2 % | | 1.6 % | |
| Interest rate range during each year | | 2.3 - 4.8 % | | 1.9 - 4.3 % | | 1.4 - 4.0 % | |
| Weighted average interest rates on borrowings outstanding at year end | 2.9 % | | | 2.3 % | | 2.8 % | |

- (1) Average borrowings outstanding is computed as the average of the current and four prior quarters ending balances of our credit facility.
- (2) The average interest rate during each year is computed by dividing the total interest expense associated with the Credit Agreement for a fiscal year by the average borrowings outstanding for the same fiscal year.

The following table contains a summary of the components of our interest expense for the periods covered by our consolidated statements of income:

INTEREST EXPENSE

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|---|--------|----|--------|----|--------|--|--|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 | | | | | |
| Interest and commitment fees | \$ | 13,084 | \$ | 13,745 | \$ | 9,941 | | | | | |
| Deferred finance costs | | 887 | | 706 | | 651 | | | | | |
| Interest rate swap settlements, net | | 54 | | - | | (11) | | | | | |
| Cross-currency debt swap | | (74) | | (90) | | - | | | | | |
| Total interest expense | \$ | 13,951 | \$ | 14,361 | \$ | 10,581 | | | | | |

Note 16 - Fair Value

We classify our various assets and liabilities recorded or reported at fair value under a hierarchy prescribed by GAAP that prioritizes inputs to fair value measurement techniques into three broad levels:

- Level 1: Observable inputs such as quoted prices for identical assets or liabilities in active markets;
- Level 2: Observable inputs other than quoted prices that are directly or indirectly observable for
 the asset or liability, including quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities in active markets;
 quoted prices for similar or identical assets or liabilities in markets that are not active; and modelderived valuations whose inputs are observable or whose significant value drivers are observable;
 and
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs that reflect the reporting entity's own assumptions.

Assets and liabilities subject to classification are classified upon acquisition. When circumstances dictate the transfer of an asset or liability to a different level, our policy is to recognize the transfer at the beginning of the reporting period in which the event resulting in the transfer occurred.

The following tables present the fair value of our financial assets and liabilities measured on a recurring basis as of the last day of February 2018 and 2017:

FAIR VALUES OF FINANCIAL ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

| (in thousands) | Febru | r Values at uary 28, 2018 .evel 2) ⁽¹⁾ |
|----------------------------|-------|---|
| Assets: | | |
| Money market accounts | \$ | 1,107 |
| Interest rate swap | | 922 |
| Foreign currency contracts | | 2,201 |
| Total assets | \$ | 4,230 |
| Liabilities: | | |
| Floating rate debt | \$ | 289,868 |
| Foreign currency contracts | | 2,606 |
| Total liabilities | \$ | 292,474 |

| (in thousands) | Febru | r Values at uary 28, 2017 evel 2) ⁽¹⁾ |
|----------------------------|-------|--|
| Assets: | · | - |
| Money market accounts | \$ | 2,711 |
| Foreign currency contracts | | 2,167 |
| Total assets | \$ | 4,878 |
| Liabilities: | | |
| Fixed rate debt (2) | \$ | 20,105 |
| Floating rate debt | | 465,852 |
| Foreign currency contracts | | 47 |
| Total liabilities | \$ | 486,004 |

- (1) Our financial assets and liabilities are classified as Level 2 assets because their valuation is dependent on observable inputs and other quoted prices for similar assets or liabilities, or model-derived valuations whose significant value drivers are observable.
- (2) Debt values are reported at estimated fair value in these tables, but are recorded in the accompanying consolidated balance sheets at the undiscounted value of remaining principal payments due.

The carrying amounts of cash and cash equivalents, receivables and accounts payable approximate fair value because of the short maturity of these items.

We use derivatives for hedging purposes and our derivatives are primarily interest rate swaps, foreign currency contracts and cross-currency debt swaps. See Notes 1, 17 and 18 to these consolidated financial statements for more information on our hedging activities.

We classify our fixed and floating rate debt as Level 2 items because the estimation of the fair market value of these financial assets requires the use of a discount rate based upon current market rates of interest for obligations with comparable remaining terms. Such comparable rates are considered significant other observable market inputs. The fair market value of the fixed rate debt at February 28, 2017 was computed using a discounted cash flow analysis and a discount rate of 1.8%. All other debt has floating interest rates, and its book value approximates its fair value as of the reporting date.

Our other non-financial assets include goodwill and other intangible assets, which we classify as Level 3 items. These assets are measured at fair value on a non-recurring basis as part of our impairment testing. Note 9 to these consolidated financial statements contains additional information regarding impairment testing and related intangible asset impairments. The table below presents other non-financial assets measured on a non-recurring basis using significant unobservable inputs (Level 3) for fiscal 2018 and 2017:

OTHER NON-FINANCIAL ASSETS

FAIR VALUE MEASUREMENTS USING SIGNIFICANT UNOBSERVABLE INPUTS (Level 3)

| | Fiscal Ye | ars E | nded |
|---|---------------|-------|----------|
| (in thousands) | 2018 | | 2017 |
| Beginning balances | \$ 938,324 | \$ | 762,878 |
| Total income (expense): | | | |
| Included in net income - realized | (34,128) | | (24,830) |
| Acquired during the period | 1,212 | | 200,565 |
| Acquisition adjustments and retirements during the period | (173) | | (289) |
| Ending balances | \$ 905,235 | \$ | 938,324 |

Note 17 - Financial Instruments and Risk Management

Foreign Currency Risk – Our functional currency is the U.S. Dollar. By operating internationally, we are subject to foreign currency risk from transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar ("foreign currencies"). Such transactions include sales, certain inventory purchases and operating expenses. As a result of such transactions, portions of our cash, trade accounts receivable and trade accounts payable are denominated in foreign currencies. For fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, approximately 13%, 13% and 16%, respectively, of our net sales revenue was in foreign currencies. These sales were primarily denominated in British Pounds, Euros, Mexican Pesos, Canadian Dollars, and Venezuelan Bolivars. We make most of our inventory purchases from the Far East and primarily use the U.S. Dollar for such purchases. In our consolidated statements of income, exchange gains and losses resulting from the remeasurement of foreign taxes receivable, taxes payable, deferred tax assets, and deferred tax liabilities are recognized in their respective income tax lines, and all other foreign exchange gains and losses are recognized in SG&A. We recorded net exchange gains (losses) from foreign currency fluctuations, including the impact of currency hedges and the cross-currency debt swap, of \$(3.1), \$0.5 and (\$3.1) million in SG&A during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

We hedge against certain foreign currency exchange rate-risk by using a series of forward contracts designated as cash flow hedges and mark-to-market derivatives to protect against the foreign currency exchange risk inherent in our forecasted transactions denominated in currencies other than the U.S. Dollar. We do not enter into any forward exchange contracts or similar instruments for trading or other speculative purposes. The effective portion of the changes in fair value of these instruments is reported in OCI and reclassified into SG&A in the same period they are settled. The ineffective portion, which is not material for any year presented, is immediately recognized in SG&A.

Interest Rate Risk – Interest on our outstanding debt as of February 28, 2018 is based on floating interest rates. If short-term interest rates increase, we will incur higher interest expense on any future outstanding balances of floating rate debt. Floating interest rates are hedged with an interest rate swap to effectively fix interest rates on \$100.0 million of the outstanding principal balance under the Credit Agreement, which totaled \$269.4 million as of February 28, 2018.

The following table summarizes the fair values of our various derivative instruments at the end of fiscal 2018 and 2017:

FAIR VALUES OF DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS

| | | | | | Feb | ruary 28, 20 | 018 | | | | | |
|---|---------------|-----------------------------|--------------------|---------|---|--------------|-----------------|-------|--|------------|-----|---------------------|
| (in thousands) Derivatives designated as hedging instruments | Hedge Type | Final Settlement Date | Notional Amount | | Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets | | Other Assets | | Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities | | Lia | Other abilities, |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Euro | Cash flow | 07/2019 | € | 38,000 | \$ | | \$ | 102 | \$ | 1,320 | \$ | |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Canadian Dollars | Cash flow | 06/2019 | \$ | 27,750 | | 378 | | 101 | | ´ - | • | |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Pounds | Cash flow | 04/2019 | £ | 19,500 | | - | | 56 | | 513 | | |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Mexican Pesos | Cash flow | 05/2018 | \$ | 20,000 | | 5 | | - | | - | | |
| Interest rate swap | Cash flow | 12/2021 | \$ | 100,000 | | 539 | 1 | 1,942 | | - | | |
| Subtotal | | | | | | 922 | 2 | 2,201 | | 1,833 | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Derivatives not designated under hedge accounting | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign currency contracts - cross-currency debt | _ | | | | | | | | | | | |
| swaps - Euro | (1) | 4/2020 | \$ | 5,280 | | _ | | _ | | - | | 208 |
| Foreign currency contracts - cross-currency debt | | | | , | | | | | | | | |
| swaps - Pound | (1) | 4/2020 | \$ | 6,395 | | - | | - | | - | | 56 |
| Subtotal | | | | | | - | | - | | - | | 77: |
| Total fair value | | | | | \$ | 922 | \$ 2 | 2,201 | \$ | 1,833 | \$ | 77: |

| | | | | | Fe | bruary 28, 2 | 017 | | | | | |
|--|---------------|-----------------------------|----|--------------------|----|---|-----|----------------|----|--|--------------------------|-------|
| Derivatives designated as hedging instruments | Hedge Type | Final Settlement Date | | Notional Amount | E | Prepaid Expenses and Other Current Assets | | Other ssets | 6 | Accrued Expenses and Other Current Liabilities | Oth Liabili Non-cu | ties, |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Euro | Cash flow | 2/2018 | € | 27,500 | \$ | 727 | \$ | - | \$ | - | \$ | - |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Canadian Dollars | Cash flow | 6/2018 | \$ | 26,000 | | 155 | | 32 | | - | | - |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Pounds | Cash flow | 2/2018 | £ | 13,500 | | 548 | | - | | - | | - |
| Foreign currency contracts - sell Mexican Pesos | Cash flow | 2/2018 | \$ | 59,600 | | - | | - | | 47 | | - |
| Subtotal | | | | | | 1,430 | | 32 | | 47 | | - |
| Derivatives not designated under hedge accounting | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Foreign currency contracts - cross-currency debt | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| swap - Euro | (1) | 1/2018 | \$ | 10,000 | | 705 | | - | | - | | - |
| Total fair value | | | | | \$ | 2,135 | \$ | 32 | \$ | 47 | \$ | - |

⁽¹⁾ These are foreign currency contracts for which we have not elected hedge accounting. We refer to them as "cross-currency debt swaps". They, in effect, adjust the currency denomination of a portion of our outstanding debt to the Euro and British Pound, as applicable, for the notional amounts reported, creating an economic hedge against currency movements.

PRE-TAX EFFECT OF DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS

The pre-tax effect of derivative instruments for fiscal 2018 and 2017 is as follows:

| | | ,. | | | | ars Ende | | | 28, | | |
|--|-----------------------------|-----|--------|--|-----|----------------------|-------------------|----------|------------------|------------|--------|
| | Gain lecogni effectiv | žed | in OCI | Gain (Loss) I Accumulated O Income (Lo | the | Gain (Loss) As Ir | Recogniz ncome | ed | | | |
| (in thousands) | 2018 | | 2017 | Location 2018 2017 | | | | Location | 2018 | 2017 | |
| Currency contracts - cash flow hedges | \$ 1,758 | \$ | 2,205 | SG&A | \$ | 4,364 | \$ | 1,454 | | \$ - | \$ - |
| Interest rate swaps - cash flow hedges | 2,481 | | - | Interest expense | | - | | - | Interest expense | (54) | - |
| Cross-currency debt swaps - principal | - | | - | | | - | | - | SG&A | (1,479) | 499 |
| Cross-currency debt swaps - interest | - | | - | | | - | | - | Interest Expense | 74 | 90 |
| Total | \$ 4,239 | \$ | 2,205 | | \$ | 4,364 | \$ | 1,454 | · | \$ (1,459) | \$ 589 |

We expect a net loss of \$0.9 million associated with foreign currency contracts and interest rate swaps currently reported in accumulated other comprehensive income, to be reclassified into income over the next twelve months. The amount ultimately realized, however, will differ as exchange rates change and the underlying contracts settle. See Notes 1, 16 and 18 to these consolidated financial statements for more information on our hedging activities.

Counterparty Credit Risk – Financial instruments, including foreign currency contracts, cross-currency debt swaps and interest rate swaps, expose us to counterparty credit risk for nonperformance. We manage our exposure to counterparty credit risk by dealing with counterparties who are substantial international financial institutions with significant experience using such derivative instruments. Although our theoretical credit risk is the replacement cost at the then-estimated fair value of these instruments, we believe that the risk of incurring credit risk losses is remote.

Risks Inherent in Cash and Cash Equivalents – As the levels of our cash and cash equivalents change, they can become more subject to foreign exchange rate risk, interest rate risk, credit risk, and liquidity risk. Cash consists of interest-bearing, non-interest-bearing and short-term investment accounts. We consider money market accounts to be cash equivalents.

The following table summarizes our cash and cash equivalents at the end of fiscal 2018 and 2017:

CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS

| | February | 28, 2018 | February 28, 2017 | | | | |
|--|------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------|--------|----------------------------|--|--|
| (in thousands) | Carrying Amount | Range of Interest Rates | Carrying Amount | | Range of Interest Rates | | |
| Cash, interest and non-interest-bearing accounts | \$ 19,631 | 0.00 to 0.35% | \$ | 21,138 | 0.00 to 0.35% | | |
| Money market funds | 1,107 | 0.0 to 0.03% | | 2,711 | 0.18 to 0.19% | | |
| Total cash and cash equivalents | \$ 20,738 | | \$ | 23,848 | | | |

Note 18 – Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (Loss)

The changes in accumulated other comprehensive income (loss) by component and related tax effects for fiscal 2018 and 2017 were as follows:

CHANGES IN ACCUMULATED OTHER COMPREHENSIVE INCOME (LOSS) BY COMPONENT

| Unrealized Holding Gains (Losses) on C | Cash Flow | Hedges | | |
|--|-----------|-------------------|----------------------------------|-------------|
| (in thousands) | | terest e Swaps | Foreign Currency Contracts | Total |
| Balance at February 29, 2016 | \$ | - | \$ 665 | \$ 665 |
| Other comprehensive income before reclassification | | - | 2,205 | 2,205 |
| Amounts reclassified out of accumulated other comprehensive income | | - | (1,454) | (1,454) |
| Tax effects | | - | (243) | (243) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) | | - | 508 | 508 |
| Balance at February 28, 2017 | \$ | - | \$ 1,173 | \$ 1,173 |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) before reclassification | | 2,481 | 1,758 | 4,239 |
| Amounts reclassified out of accumulated other comprehensive income | | - | (4,364) | (4,364) |
| Tax effects | | (776) | 359 | (417) |
| Other comprehensive income (loss) | | 1,705 | (2,247) | (542) |
| Balance at February 28, 2018 | \$ | 1,705 | \$ (1,074) | \$ 631 |

See Notes 1, 16 and 17 to these consolidated financial statements for additional information regarding our hedging activities.

Note 19 - Segment and Geographic Information

The following table contains segment information included in continuing operations.

SEGMENT INFORMATION

| (in thousands) | | | | | | | | | |
|---|-----|-------------------------|--------------------------|---------|----|---------|-------|-----------|--|
| Fiscal 2018 | Ηοι | ısewares ⁽¹⁾ | Health & Home | | | Beauty | Total | | |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 457,819 | \$ | 682,605 | \$ | 349,323 | \$ | 1,489,747 | |
| Asset impairment charges | | - | | - | | 15,447 | | 15,447 | |
| Restructuring charges | | 220 | | - | | 1,637 | | 1,857 | |
| Operating income | | 89,319 | \$ | 62,099 | \$ | 17,644 | | 169,062 | |
| Identifiable assets | | 664,151 | | 674,440 | | 282,729 | | 1,621,320 | |
| Capital and intangible asset expenditures | | 8,537 | | 3,716 | | 1,352 | | 13,605 | |
| Depreciation and amortization | | 5,825 | | 16,750 | | 11,155 | | 33,730 | |

| Fiscal 2017 | Housewares (1) | | | alth & Home | Beauty | Total | | |
|---|----------------|---------|----|-------------|---------------|-------|-----------|--|
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 418,128 | \$ | 632,769 | \$ 355,779 | \$ | 1,406,676 | |
| Asset impairment charges | | - | | - | 2,900 | | 2,900 | |
| Restructuring charges | | - | | - | - | | - | |
| Operating income | | 89,020 | | 51,072 | 29,572 | | 169,664 | |
| Identifiable assets | | 642,967 | | 679,248 | 284,992 | | 1,607,207 | |
| Capital and intangible asset expenditures | | 5,652 | | 5,192 | 4,663 | | 15,507 | |
| Depreciation and amortization | | 5,795 | | 20,483 | 9,897 | | 36,175 | |

| Fiscal 2016 | Н | ousewares | Hea | alth & Home | Beauty | Total |
|---|----|-----------|-----|-------------|---------------|-----------|
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 310,663 | \$ | 642,735 | \$ 439,177 | 1,392,575 |
| Asset impairment charges | | - | | - | 6,000 | 6,000 |
| Restructuring charges | | - | | - | - | - |
| Operating income | | 55,944 | | 36,860 | 23,490 | 116,294 |
| Identifiable assets | | 610,176 | | 715,104 | 306,651 | 1,631,931 |
| Capital and intangible asset expenditures | | 1,560 | | 9,131 | 5,985 | 16,676 |
| Depreciation and amortization | | 4,532 | | 22,022 | 8,335 | 34,889 |

⁽¹⁾ Fiscal 2018 includes a full twelve months of operating results for Hydro Flask, compared to eleven and one-half months for fiscal 2017.

We compute segment operating income based on net sales revenue, less cost of goods sold, SG&A and any asset impairment charges associated with the segment. The SG&A used to compute each segment's operating income is directly associated with the segment, plus shared service and corporate overhead expenses that are allocable to the segment. We have reallocated corporate overhead expenses to the above continuing segments that were previously allocated to our former Nutritional Supplements segment. We do not allocate nonoperating income and expense, including interest or income taxes, to operating segments.

Our domestic and international net sales revenue and long-lived assets were as follows:

GEOGRAPHIC INFORMATION

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | | | | |
|---------------------|--|-----------|----|-----------|----|-----------|--|--|
| (in thousands) | | 2018 | | | | 2016 | | |
| SALES REVENUE, NET: | | | | | | | | |
| United States | \$ | 1,168,888 | \$ | 1,111,109 | \$ | 1,080,338 | | |
| International | | 320,859 | | 295,567 | | 312,237 | | |
| Total | \$ | 1,489,747 | \$ | 1,406,676 | \$ | 1,392,575 | | |
| | | | | | | | | |
| LONG-LIVED ASSETS: | | | | | | | | |
| United States | \$ | 437,920 | \$ | 409,337 | \$ | 407,621 | | |
| International: | | | | | | | | |
| Barbados | | 496,258 | | 499,064 | | 315,182 | | |
| Other international | | 131,830 | | 159,490 | | 171,774 | | |
| Subtotal | | 628,088 | | 658,554 | | 486,956 | | |
| Total | \$ | 1,066,008 | \$ | 1,067,891 | \$ | 894,577 | | |

The table above classifies assets based upon the country where we hold legal title.

Worldwide sales to our largest customer and its affiliates accounted for approximately 15%, 16% and 18% of our net sales revenue in fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively. Sales to this customer are made within the Beauty and Health & Home segments. Of these sales, approximately 78%, 79%, and 78% for fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, respectively, were within the United States. Sales to our second largest customer accounted for 13% of our net sales in fiscal 2018. No other customers accounted for 10% or more of net sales revenue during the periods presented.

Note 20 - Selected Quarterly Financial Data (Unaudited)

Selected unaudited quarterly financial data is as follows (in thousands except share data):

SELECTED QUARTERLY FINANCIAL DATA

| Fiscal Year 2018: | | May | | August | N | lovember | ı | February | | Total |
|--|-----------|--|-------------|---|-------------|-------------------------------|-----------|--|----------|--|
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 327,986 | \$ | 347,205 | \$ | 423,709 | \$ | 390,847 | \$ | 1,489,747 |
| Gross profit | | 134,065 | | 145,733 | | 181,005 | | 161,298 | | 622,101 |
| Asset impairment charges | | 4,000 | | - | | - | | 11,447 | | 15,447 |
| Income from continuing operations | | 27,308 | | 34,572 | | 58,624 | | 8,378 | | 128,882 |
| Income (loss) from discontinued operations | | (21,440) | | (25,639) | | (89,060) | | 51,703 | | (84,436) |
| Earnings (loss) per share (1) | | | | | | | | | | |
| Basic | | | | | | | | | | |
| Continuing operations | \$ | 1.01 | \$ | 1.27 | \$ | 2.16 | \$ | 0.31 | \$ | 4.76 |
| Discontinued operations | _ | (0.79) | _ | (0.94) | _ | (3.28) | _ | 1.91 | _ | (3.12) |
| Total earnings per share | \$_ | 0.22 | \$ _ | 0.33 | \$ _ | (1.12) | \$ | 2.22 | \$_ | 1.64 |
| Diluted | | | | | | | | | | |
| Continuing operations | \$ | 1.00 | \$ | 1.26 | \$ | 2.15 | \$ | 0.31 | \$ | 4.73 |
| Discontinued operations | _ | (0.79) | _ | (0.94) | _ | (3.27) | | 1.91 | _ | (3.10) |
| Total earnings per share | \$ | 0.22 | \$ | 0.33 | \$ | (1.12) | \$_ | 2.22 | \$ | 1.63 |
| Fiscal Year 2017: | | May | | August | N | lovember | | ebruary | | Total |
| Sales revenue, net | \$ | 311,998 | \$ | 335,058 | \$ | 412,251 | \$ | 347,369 | \$ | 1,406,676 |
| | | 126,633 | | 120 200 | | 171,927 | | 144,607 | | 582,557 |
| Gross profit | | 120,033 | | 139,390 | | ,0 | | 144,007 | | |
| Gross profit Asset impairment charges | | 2,400 | | 139,390 | | - | | 500 | | 2,900 |
| • | | , | | 29,465 | | 56,774 | | | | 2,900 144,310 |
| Asset impairment charges | | 2,400 | | - | | - | | 500 | | |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations | | 2,400 23,646 | | - 29,465 | | 56,774 | | 500 34,425 | | 144,310 |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) | | 2,400 23,646 | | - 29,465 | | 56,774 | | 500 34,425 | | 144,310 |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic | \$ | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) | \$ | 29,465 (1,110) | \$ | 56,774 838 | \$ | 500 34,425 1,271 | \$ | 144,310 (3,621) |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic Continuing operations | \$ | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) | \$ | 29,465 (1,110) | \$ | 56,774 838 | \$ | 500 34,425 1,271 | \$ | 144,310 (3,621) 5.24 |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic Continuing operations Discontinued operations | | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) 0.85 (0.17) | _ | 29,465 (1,110) 1.06 (0.04) | _ | 56,774 838 2.07 0.03 | | 500 34,425 1,271 1.27 0.05 | | 144,310 (3,621) 5.24 (0.13) |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic Continuing operations | \$ \$_ | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) | \$ \$_ | 29,465 (1,110) | \$ \$_ | 56,774 838 | \$ \$_ | 500 34,425 1,271 | \$ \$ | 144,310 (3,621) 5.24 |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic Continuing operations Discontinued operations | | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) 0.85 (0.17) | _ | 29,465 (1,110) 1.06 (0.04) | _ | 56,774 838 2.07 0.03 | | 500 34,425 1,271 1.27 0.05 | | 144,310 (3,621) 5.24 (0.13) |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic Continuing operations Discontinued operations Total earnings per share | | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) 0.85 (0.17) | _ | 29,465 (1,110) 1.06 (0.04) | _ | 56,774 838 2.07 0.03 | | 500 34,425 1,271 1.27 0.05 | | 144,310 (3,621) 5.24 (0.13) |
| Asset impairment charges Income from continuing operations Income (loss) from discontinued operations Earnings (loss) per share (1) Basic Continuing operations Discontinued operations Total earnings per share Diluted | \$_ | 2,400 23,646 (4,620) 0.85 (0.17) 0.69 | \$_ | 29,465 (1,110) 1.06 (0.04) 1.02 | \$ | 2.07 0.03 2.10 | \$_ | 500 34,425 1,271 1.27 0.05 1.31 | \$ | 144,310 (3,621) 5.24 (0.13) 5.11 |

⁽¹⁾ Earnings per share calculations for each quarter are based on the weighted average number of shares outstanding for each period, and the sum of the quarterly amounts may not necessarily equal the annual earnings per share amounts.

Note 21 - Income Taxes

We reorganized the Company in Bermuda in 1994 and many of our foreign subsidiaries are not directly or indirectly owned by a U.S. parent. As such, a large portion of our foreign income is not subject to U.S. taxation on a permanent basis under current law. Additionally, our intellectual property is largely owned by foreign subsidiaries, resulting in proportionally higher earnings in jurisdictions with lower statutory tax rates, which decreases our overall effective tax rate. The taxable income earned in each jurisdiction, whether U.S. or foreign, is determined by the subsidiary's operating results, and transfer pricing and tax regulations in the related jurisdictions.

On December 22, 2017, the Tax Cuts and Jobs Act (the "Tax Act") was enacted into law. Among other changes, the Tax Act lowered the U.S. corporate income tax rate from 35% to 21% and established a

modified territorial system requiring a mandatory deemed repatriation tax on undistributed earnings of certain foreign subsidiaries. The rate change is effective at the beginning of calendar year 2018 and, as a result, we have a blended U.S. federal statutory tax rate of 32.7% for our fiscal year 2018.

Under accounting standards for income taxes, the impact of new tax legislation must be taken into account in the period in which it is enacted. Subsequent to the Tax Act, the SEC issued Staff Accounting Bulletin 118 ("SAB 118") allowing companies to use provisional estimates to record the effects of the Tax Act. SAB 118 also provides a measurement period (not to exceed one year from the date of enactment) to complete the accounting for the impacts of the Tax Act.

As a result of the enactment, we have recorded a provisional tax expense of \$17.9 million related to the one-time remeasurement of our U.S. deferred tax assets and liabilities based on the rates at which they are expected to reverse in the future, the one-time repatriation tax applied to our undistributed foreign earnings, and the impact of executive compensation that is no longer deductible under the Tax Act. The ultimate impact may differ from these provisional amounts due to additional analysis, changes in interpretations and assumptions we have made, additional regulatory guidance that may be issued and actions the we may take as a result of the Tax Act. Any subsequent adjustments to provisional estimates will be reflected in our income tax provision during one or more periods in our fiscal 2019.

Due to the enactment of the Tax Act, future repatriations of foreign earnings will generally be free of U.S. federal income tax but may incur withholding or state taxes. As of February 28, 2018, we have not made a change to our assertion that undistributed net earnings with respect to certain foreign subsidiaries are indefinitely reinvested outside the United States. All undistributed net earnings have been taxed in the U.S. as a result of the Tax Act, and consistent with our assertion, the Company intends to limit any future distributions to previously taxed income. However, we are continuing to analyze the impact of the Tax Act on our assertion.

Our components of income before income tax expense are as follows:

COMPONENTS OF INCOME BEFORE TAXES

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | | | | | |
|----------------|--|---------|----|---------|----|---------|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | 2 | 2018 | | 2017 | | 2016 | | | |
| U.S. | \$ | 23,824 | \$ | 20,878 | \$ | 17,069 | | | |
| Non-U.S. | | 131,614 | | 134,839 | | 88,943 | | | |
| Total | \$ | 155,438 | \$ | 155,717 | \$ | 106,012 | | | |

Our components of income tax expense (benefit) are as follows:

COMPONENTS OF INCOME TAX EXPENSE (BENEFIT)

| | Fisca | l Years E | nde | d the Last Da | ay of | February, |
|----------------|-------|-----------|-----|---------------|-------|-----------|
| (in thousands) | 20 | 2018 | | | | 2016 |
| U.S. | | | | | | |
| Current | \$ | 3,380 | \$ | 19,195 | \$ | 10,444 |
| Deferred | | 19,578 | | (10,475) | | (4,428) |
| | | 22,958 | | 8,720 | | 6,016 |
| | | | | | | |
| Non-U.S. | | | | | | |
| Current | | 1,912 | | (290) | | 4,919 |
| Deferred | | 1,686 | | 2,977 | | 2,086 |
| | | 3,598 | | 2,687 | | 7,005 |
| Total | \$ | 26,556 | \$ | 11,407 | \$ | 13,021 |

Our total income tax expense differs from the amounts computed by applying the U.S. statutory tax rate to income before income taxes. A summary of these differences are as follows:

INCOME TAX RATE RECONCILIATION

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of Februar | | | | |
|--|--|---------|---------|--|--|
| | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | | |
| Effective income tax rate at the U.S. statutory rate | 32.7 % | 35.0 % | 35.0 % | | |
| Impact of U.S. state income taxes | 0.5 % | 0.5 % | (0.1)% | | |
| Effect of statutory tax rate in Macau | (19.5)% | (20.1)% | (21.8)% | | |
| Effect of statutory tax rate in Barbados | (5.2)% | (7.3)% | (7.6)% | | |
| Effect of statutory tax rate in Europe | (5.3)% | (3.6)% | - % | | |
| Effect of statutory tax rate in Switzerland | - % | - % | (6.5)% | | |
| Effect of income from other non-U.S. operations subject to varying rates | 2.1 % | 2.1 % | 4.6 % | | |
| Effect of foreign exchange fluctuations | 0.3 % | 0.4 % | 3.8 % | | |
| Effect of asset impairment charges | 2.2 % | 0.4 % | 1.3 % | | |
| Effect of U.S. tax reform | 11.5 % | - % | - % | | |
| Effect of uncertain tax positions | (1.3)% | - % | - % | | |
| Other Items | (0.9)% | (0.1)% | 3.6 % | | |
| Effective income tax rate | 17.1 % | 7.3 % | 12.3 % | | |

Our Macau subsidiary generates income from the sale of the goods that it has sourced and procured. This subsidiary is responsible for the sourcing and procurement of a large portion of the products that we sell. We have an indefinite tax holiday in Macau conditioned on the subsidiary meeting certain employment and investment thresholds. We have not experienced any issues in meeting the required thresholds and are unaware of any regulatory changes or impending circumstances that would restrict our right to continue to benefit from the tax holiday. Because our Macau subsidiary is not directly or indirectly owned by a U.S. parent, there is no U.S. tax liability associated with the income generated in Macau.

Each year there are significant transactions or events that are incidental to our core businesses and that by a combination of their nature and jurisdiction, can have a disproportionate impact on our reported effective tax rates. Without these transactions or events, the trend in our effective tax rates would follow a more normalized pattern.

The tax effects of temporary differences that give rise to significant portions of the deferred tax assets and liabilities as of the last day of February 2018 and 2017 are as follows:

COMPONENTS OF DEFERRED TAX ASSETS AND LIABILITIES

| | Last Da | y of Fe | of February, | | |
|-------------------------------------|----------|---------|--------------|--|--|
| (in thousands) | 2018 | | 2017 | | |
| Deferred tax assets, gross: | | | | | |
| Operating loss carryforwards | \$ 32,82 | 9 \$ | 16,799 | | |
| Accounts receivable | 4,76 | 7 | 7,375 | | |
| Inventories | 7,18 | 3 | 11,057 | | |
| Accrued expenses and other | 7,38 | 5 | 12,007 | | |
| Total gross deferred tax assets | 52,16 | 4 | 47,238 | | |
| Valuation allowance | (17,74 | 7) | (17,600) | | |
| Deferred tax liabilities: | | | | | |
| Depreciation and amortization | (24,85 | 9) | (47,774) | | |
| Total deferred tax liabilities, net | \$ 9,55 | 8 \$ | (18,136) | | |

In assessing the realizability of deferred tax assets, we consider whether it is more likely than not that some portion or all of the deferred tax assets will not be realized. We consider the scheduled reversal of deferred tax liabilities, expected future taxable income and tax planning strategies in assessing the ultimate realization of deferred tax assets. If recovery is not likely, we must increase our provision for taxes by recording a valuation allowance against the deferred tax assets that we estimate will not be

recoverable. In fiscal 2018, the \$0.1 million net decrease in our valuation allowance was principally due to changes in estimates regarding the value of operating loss carryforwards to be used in the future.

As of February 28, 2018 and 2017, we had remaining tax-deductible goodwill of \$19.0 million and \$113.0 million, respectively, resulting from acquisitions. The amortization of this goodwill is deductible over various periods ranging up to 2 years. The tax deduction for goodwill in fiscal 2019 is expected to be approximately \$1.3 million.

The composition of our operating loss carryforwards at the end of fiscal 2018 is as follows:

SUMMARY OF OPERATING LOSS CARRYFORWARD

| | Balances at February 28, 2018 | | | | | | | |
|---|-------------------------------|----|----------|-----|------------|--|--|--|
| | Tax Year | | Deferred | | perating | | | |
| | Expiration | | Tax | | Loss | | | |
| (in thousands) | Date Range | | Assets | Car | rryforward | | | |
| U.S. federal and state operating loss carryforward | 2021 - Indefinite | \$ | 16,549 | \$ | 81,856 | | | |
| Non-U.S. operating loss carryforwards with definite carryover periods | 2020 - 2035 | | 2,103 | | 7,853 | | | |
| Non-U.S. operating loss carryforwards with indefinite carryover periods | Indefinite | | 14,177 | | 50,436 | | | |
| Subtotals | | | 32,829 | \$ | 140,145 | | | |
| Less portion of valuation allowance established for operating loss | | | | | | | | |
| carryforwards | | | (16,406) | | | | | |
| Total | | \$ | 16,423 | | | | | |

Any future amount of deferred tax asset considered realizable could be reduced in the near term if estimates of future taxable income during any carryforward periods are reduced.

During fiscal 2018 and 2017, changes in the total amount of unrecognized tax benefits were as follows:

UNRECOGNIZED TAX BENEFITS

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February | | | | | |
|--|--|--------|----------|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | 201 | 8 | 2017 | | | |
| Total unrecognized tax benefits, beginning balance | \$ | 6,611 | \$ 8,737 | | | |
| Tax positions taken during the current period | | - | - | | | |
| Resolution of tax dispute | (| 1,486) | - | | | |
| Changes in tax positions taken during a prior period | | 88 | (1,260) | | | |
| Lapse in statute of limitations | | (890) | (218) | | | |
| Impact of foreign currency re-measurement | | 218 | (133) | | | |
| Settlements | | (113) | (515) | | | |
| Total unrecognized tax benefits, ending balance | | 4,428 | 6,611 | | | |
| Less current unrecognized tax benefits | (| 1,079) | - | | | |
| Noncurrent unrecognized tax benefits | \$ | 3,349 | \$ 6,611 | | | |

Included in the balance of unrecognized tax benefits at the end of fiscal 2018 were \$4.4 million of tax benefits, which, if recognized, would affect our effective tax rate. We do not expect any significant changes to our existing unrecognized tax benefits during the next twelve months resulting from any issues currently pending with tax authorities.

We classify interest and penalties on uncertain tax positions as income tax expense. At the end of February 2018 and 2017, the liability for tax-related interest and penalties included in unrecognized tax benefits was \$1.1 million and \$1.7 million, respectively. Additionally, during fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016 we recognized expense (benefit) of (\$0.5) (\$0.6) and \$0.5 million, respectively, in the consolidated statements of income.

We file income tax returns in the U.S. federal jurisdiction and in various states and foreign jurisdictions. We do not expect that any proposed adjustments from these tax jurisdictions will have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements.

As of February 28, 2018, tax years under examination or still subject to examination by material tax jurisdictions are as follows:

| Tax Years Under | | | | | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|-------------------------|------|--|--|--|--|
| Jurisdiction | Examination | Open Tax Years | | | | | | |
| United Kingdom | - None - | 2017 | - | 2018 | | | | |
| United States | 2016 | 2007, 2 | 2007, 2008, 2015 - 2018 | | | | | |
| Switzerland | - None - | 2014 | - | 2018 | | | | |
| Hong Kong | - None - | 2010 | - | 2018 | | | | |

During fiscal 2017 we received an assessment from a state tax authority which adjusted taxable income applicable to the particular state resulting from interpretations of certain state income tax provisions applicable to our legal structure. We believe we have accurately reported our taxable income and are vigorously protesting the assessment through administrative processes with the state. We believe it is unlikely that the outcome of these matters will have a material adverse effect on our consolidated financial position, results of operations, or liquidity.

Note 22 - Earnings Per Share

We compute basic earnings per share using the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding during the period. We compute diluted earnings per share using the weighted average number of shares of common stock outstanding plus the effect of dilutive securities. Dilutive securities at any given point in time may consist of outstanding options to purchase common stock and issued and contingently issuable unvested RSUs and PSUs. See Note 10 to these consolidated financial statements for more information regarding RSUs, PSUs and other performance based stock awards. Options for common stock are excluded from the computation of diluted earnings per share if their effect is antidilutive.

For fiscal 2018, 2017 and 2016, the components of basic and diluted shares were as follows:

WEIGHTED AVERAGE DILUTED SECURITIES

| | Fiscal Years Ended the Last Day of February, | | | | | | |
|---|--|--------|--------|--|--|--|--|
| (in thousands) | 2018 | 2017 | 2016 | | | | |
| Weighted average shares outstanding, basic | 27,077 | 27,522 | 28,273 | | | | |
| Incremental shares from share-based compensation arrangements | 177 | 369 | 476 | | | | |
| Weighted average shares outstanding, diluted | 27,254 | 27,891 | 28,749 | | | | |
| Dilutive securities, stock options | 230 | 365 | 317 | | | | |
| Dilutive securities, unvested or unsettled stock awards | 114 | 186 | 227 | | | | |
| Antidilutive securities | 319 | 137 | 159 | | | | |
| 101 | | | | | | | |

HELEN OF TROY LIMITED AND SUBSIDIARIES

Schedule II - Valuation and Qualifying Accounts

| | | | Ad | ditior | ıs | | | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|----|------------------------------------|--------|---|-----|----------------|----|-------------------|
| (in thousands) | ginning alance | С | narged to ost and penses (1) | | Net charge (credit) to es revenue (2) | Dec | Deductions (3) | | Ending Salance |
| Year Ended February 28, 2018 | | | | | | | | | |
| Allowances for doubtful accounts | \$ 3,266 | \$ | 1,066 | \$ | - | \$ | 1,420 | \$ | 2,912 |
| Allowances for sales returns | 2,293 | | - | | 104 | | - | \$ | 2,397 |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| Year Ended February 28, 2017 | | | | | | | | | |
| Allowances for doubtful accounts | \$ 1,712 | \$ | 2,277 | \$ | - | \$ | 723 | \$ | 3,266 |
| Allowances for sales returns | 4,165 | | - | | (1,872) | | - | \$ | 2,293 |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| Year Ended February 29, 2016 | | | | | | | | | |
| Allowances for doubtful accounts | \$ 1,830 | \$ | 298 | \$ | - | \$ | 416 | \$ | 1,712 |
| Allowances for sales returns | 4,033 | | - | | 132 | | - | \$ | 4,165 |

All amounts presented above have been restated to exclude the impact of our discontinued operations.

- $(1) \quad \text{Represents periodic charges to the provision for doubtful accounts}.$
- (2) Represents net charges (credits) during the period to sales returns and allowances.
- (3) Represents write-offs of doubtful accounts, net of recoveries of previously reserved amounts .

Item 9. Changes In and Disagreements with Accountants on Accounting and Financial Disclosure

Not applicable.

Item 9A. Controls and Procedures

Evaluation of Disclosure Controls and Procedures

Under the supervision and with the participation of our management, including the Chief Executive Officer (CEO) and Chief Financial Officer (CFO), we have evaluated the effectiveness of the design and operation of our disclosure controls and procedures as defined in Rule 13a-15(e) promulgated under the Exchange Act as of February 28, 2018. Based upon that evaluation, our CEO and CFO concluded that our disclosure controls and procedures are effective to ensure that information we are required to disclose in reports that we file or submit under the Exchange Act is accumulated and communicated to management, including the CEO and CFO, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure and is recorded, processed, summarized, and reported within the time periods specified in the SEC's rules and forms.

Management's Report on Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

The management's report on internal control over financial reporting and the attestation report on internal controls over financial reporting of the independent registered public accounting firm required by this item are set forth under Item 8., "Financial Statements and Supplementary Data" of this Annual Report on Form 10-K and are incorporated herein by reference.

Changes in Internal Control Over Financial Reporting

In connection with the evaluation described above, we identified no change in our internal control over financial reporting as defined in Rule 13a-15(f) promulgated under the Exchange Act that occurred during our fiscal year ended February 28, 2018, that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

PART III

Item 10. Directors, Executive Officers and Corporate Governance

- Information in our definitive Proxy Statement for the 2018 Annual General Meeting of Shareholders (the "Proxy Statement") is incorporated by reference in response to this Item 10, as noted below:
- Information about our Directors who are standing for re-election is set forth under "Election of Directors";
- Information about our executive officers is set forth under "Executive Officers";
- Information about our Audit Committee, including members of the committee, and our designated "audit committee financial experts" is set forth under "Corporate Governance" and "Board Committees and Meetings"; and
- Information about Section 16(a) beneficial ownership reporting compliance is set forth under "Section 16(a) Beneficial Ownership Reporting Compliance."
- Information about any material changes to procedures for recommending nominees to the board of directors is set forth under "Board Committees and Meetings."

We have adopted a Code of Ethics governing our Chief Executive Officer, Chief Financial Officer, Principal Accounting Officer, and finance department members. The full text of our Code of Ethics is published on our website, at www.hotus.com, under the "Investor Relations-Corporate Governance" caption. We intend to disclose future amendments to, or waivers from, certain provisions of this Code on our website or in a current report on Form 8-K.

Item 11. Executive Compensation

Information set forth under the captions "Director Compensation"; "Executive Compensation"; "Compensation Discussion and Analysis"; "Compensation Committee Interlocks and Insider Participation"; and "Report of the Compensation Committee" in our Proxy Statement is incorporated by reference in response to this Item 11.

Item 12. Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management and Related Shareholder Matters

Information set forth under the captions "Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management" and "Executive Compensation" in our Proxy Statement is incorporated by reference in response to this Item 12.

Item 13. Certain Relationships and Related Transactions, and Director Independence

Information set forth under the captions "Certain Relationships - Related Person Transactions"; "Corporate Governance"; and "Board Committees and Meetings" in our Proxy Statement is incorporated by reference in response to this Item 13.

Item 14. Principal Accounting Fees and Services

Information set forth under the caption "Audit and Other Fees Paid to our Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm" in our Proxy Statement is incorporated by reference in response to this Item 14.

PART IV

Item 15. Exhibits, Financial Statement Schedules

- Financial Statements: See "Index to Consolidated Financial Statements" under Item 8 in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.
 - 2. Financial Statement Schedule: See "Schedule II" in this Annual Report on Form 10-K.
 - 3. Exhibits

The exhibit numbers succeeded by an asterisk (*) indicate exhibits physically filed with this Form 10-K. The exhibit numbers succeeded by an asterisk (**) indicate exhibits furnished with this Form 10-K that are not deemed filed for purposes of Section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 and otherwise are not subject to liability. All other exhibit numbers indicate exhibits filed by incorporation by reference. Exhibit numbers succeeded by a cross (†) are management contracts or compensatory plans or arrangements.

| 2.1 | Agreement and Plan of Merger dated as of December 8, 2010, among Helen of Troy | | |
|--------|---|--|--|
| | Texas Corporation, KI Acquisition Corp., Kaz, Inc., the Company, and the Kaz, Inc. | | |
| | shareholders party thereto (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 2.1 to the Company's | | |
| | Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on | | |
| | <u>December 9, 2010).</u> | | |
| 3.1 | Memorandum of Association (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 3.1 to the Company's | | |
| | Registration Statement on Form S-4, File No. 33-73594, filed with the Securities and | | |
| | Exchange Commission on December 30, 1993 (the "1993 S-4")). | | |
| 3.2 | Bye-Laws, as amended (incorporated by reference to Appendix A to the Company's | | |
| | Definitive Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A, File No. 001-14669, filed with the Securities | | |
| | and Exchange Commission on June 27, 2016). | | |
| 10.1 + | Form of Indemnification Agreement (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 of the | | |
| | Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 28, 2014, filed | | |
| | with the Securities and Exchange Commission on April 29, 2014 (the "2014 10-K")). | | |
| 10.2 + | Amended and Restated Helen of Troy Limited 1998 Stock Option and Restricted Stock | | |
| | Plan (incorporated by reference to Appendix A to the Company's Definitive Proxy | | |
| | Statement on Schedule 14A, File Number 001-14669, filed with the Securities and | | |
| | Exchange Commission on June 15, 2005). | | |
| 10.3 + | Form of Helen of Troy Limited Nonstatutory Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by | | |
| | reference to Exhibit 10.25 of the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal | | |
| | year ended February 28, 2006, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on | | |
| | May 15, 2006 (the "2006 10-K")). | | |
| 10.4 + | Form of Helen of Troy Limited Incentive Stock Option Agreement (incorporated by | | |
| | reference to Exhibit 10.26 of the 2006 10-K). | | |
| 10.5 + | Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (incorporated by reference to | | |
| | Appendix A to the (incorporated by reference to Appendix A to the Company's Definitive | | |
| | Proxy Statement on Schedule 14A filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on | | |
| | June 27, 2008 (the "2008 Proxy Statement")). | | |
| 10.6 + | Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Non-Employee Directors Stock Incentive Plan (incorporated by | | |
| | reference to Appendix C to the 2008 Proxy Statement). | | |
| | | | |

| npany's 2008 Non-Employee Directors |
|---|
| to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current |
| Exchange Commission on August 26, |
| |
| 011, by and among Helen of Troy, L.P., |
| s company, and the purchasers party |
| 1 to the Company's Current Report on |
| e Commission on January 18, 2011). |
| 008 Stock Incentive Plan (incorporated by |
| ent Report on Form 8-K, filed with the |
| t 25, 2015). |
| 011 Annual Incentive Plan (incorporated |
| uarterly Report on 10-Q, filed with the |
| er 11, 2016). |
| and between Kaz USA, Inc. and |
| porated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the |
| th the Securities and Exchange |
| |
| , by Helen of Troy Limited and certain of |
| (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 |
| iled with the Securities and Exchange |
| |
| een Mississippi Business Finance |
| as trustee (incorporated by reference to |
| Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and |
| · |
| eement (incorporated by reference to |
| n Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended |
| Exchange Commission on April 29, 2013 |
| |
| npany's 2008 Non-Employee Directors |
| to Exhibit 10.35 of the 2013 10-K). |
| as of February 7, 2014, made by Helen of |
| mpany, HOT Nevada, Inc., Helen of Troy |
| oration, Idelle Labs Ltd., OXO International |
| Limited, Kaz, Inc., Kaz USA, Inc., Kaz |
| ts, Inc., in favor of Bank of America, N.A. |
| Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, |
| ion on February 10, 2014). |
| ted as of June 11, 2014, made by Helen |
| avor of Bank of America, N.A. |
| Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, |
| ion on June 17, 2014). |
| January 16, 2015, by and among Helen |
| |
| of Troy Limited, a Bermuda company, |
| of Troy Limited, a Bermuda company, and the other lenders party thereto |
| |
| |

| 10.19 | First Amendment to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement dated December 7, 2016, |
|---------|---|
| | by and among Helen of Troy, L.P., a Texas limited partnership, Helen of Troy Limited, a |
| | Bermuda company, Bank of America, N.A., as administrative agent, and the other lenders |
| | party thereto (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Current Report |
| | on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on December 13, 2016). |
| 10.20* | Amended and Restated Guaranty, dated March 1, 2018, made by Helen of Troy Limited |
| | and certain of its subsidiaries in favor of Bank of America, N.A. and other lenders, pursuant |
| | to the Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated January 16, 2015. |
| 10.21 | Third Amendment to Guaranty Agreement, dated as of January 16, 2015, made by Helen |
| | of Troy Limited and certain of its subsidiaries in favor of Bank of America, N.A. |
| | (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.3 to the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, |
| | filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on January 20, 2015). |
| 10.22 | Fourth Amendment to Guaranty Agreement, dated as of December 7, 2016, made by |
| | Helen of Troy Limited and certain of its subsidiaries in favor of Bank of America, N.A. |
| | (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.22 of the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K |
| | for the fiscal year ended February 28, 2017, filed with the Securities and Exchange |
| | Commission on May 1, 2017 (the "2017 10-K")). |
| 10.23 | First Supplemental Trust Indenture, dated as of March 1, 2014, by and between |
| | Mississippi Business Finance Corporation and Deutsche Bank National Trust, as trustee |
| | (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.24 of the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K |
| | for the fiscal year ended February 28, 2015, filed with the Securities and Exchange |
| | Commission on April 29, 2015 (the "2015 10-K")). |
| 10.24 | Second Supplemental Trust Indenture, dated as of February 18, 2015 but effective |
| | February 1, 2015, by and between Mississippi Business Finance Corporation and |
| | Deutsche Bank National Trust, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the |
| | Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange |
| | Commission on February 23, 2015). |
| 10.25 | Third Supplemental Trust Indenture, dated as of December 7, 2016, but effective |
| | December 1, 2016, by and between Mississippi Business Finance Corporation and |
| | Deutsche Bank National Trust, as trustee (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.25 of the |
| 10.00 | 2017 10-K). |
| 10.26 † | Performance Restricted Stock Unit Agreement by and between Helen of Troy Limited and |
| | Julien R. Mininberg, granted May 22, 2014 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to |
| | the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission on August 7, 2015). |
| 10.07 | |
| 10.27 † | Performance Restricted Stock Unit Agreement by and between Helen of Troy Limited and Julien R. Mininberg, granted March 1, 2015 (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.2 to |
| | the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange |
| | Commission on August 7, 2015). |
| 10.28 † | Amended and Restated Employment Agreement among Helen of Troy Nevada |
| 10.20 | Corporation, Helen of Troy Limited and Julien Mininberg, dated January 7, 2016 |
| | (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10- |
| | Q for the period ending November 30, 2015, filed with the Securities and Exchange |
| | Commission on January 11, 2016). |
| 10.29 | Second Amendment, Assumption, Consent and Ratification Agreement, dated effective as |
| 10.23 | of March 1, 2018, by and among Helen of Troy Limited, a Bermuda company, Helen of |
| | Troy Texas Corporation, a Texas corporation, Helen of Troy L.P., a Texas limited |
| | partnership, the guarantors party thereto, Bank of America, N.A., as administrative agent, |
| | and the other lenders party thereto (incorporated by reference to Exhibit 10.1 to the |
| | Company's Current Report on Form 8-K, filed with the Securities and Exchange |
| | Commission on March 7, 2018). |
| | |

Table of Contents

| 10.30* + | First Amendment to Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan. |
|----------|--|
| 10.31* + | Second Amendment to Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan. |
| 21* | Subsidiaries of the Registrant. |
| 23.1* | Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm, Grant Thornton LLP. |
| 31.1* | Certification of Chief Executive Officer Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) |
| | pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. |
| 31.2* | Certification of Chief Financial Officer Pursuant to Rule 13a-14(a) or Rule 15d-14(a) |
| | pursuant to Section 302 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002. |
| 32** | Joint certification of the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer pursuant to |
| | 18 U.S.C. Section 1350, as Adopted Pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of |
| | <u>2002.</u> |
| 101.INS* | XBRL Instance Document |
| 101.SCH* | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema |
| 101.CAL* | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase |
| 101.DEF* | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase |
| 101.LAB* | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase |
| 101.PRE* | XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase |

SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of Section 13 or 15(d) of the Exchange Act, the registrant has duly caused this report to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized.

HELEN OF TROY LIMITED

By: /s/ Julien R. Mininberg
Julien R. Mininberg
Chief Executive Officer and Director
April 30, 2018

Pursuant to the requirements of the Exchange Act, this report has been signed below by the following persons on behalf of the registrant and in the capacities and on the dates indicated.

/s/ Julien R. Mininberg

Julien R. Mininberg

Chief Executive Officer, Director and Principal

Executive Officer April 30, 2018

/s/ Gary B. Abromovitz
Gary B. Abromovitz

Director, Deputy Chairman of the Board

April 30, 2018

/s/ Beryl B. Raff Beryl B. Raff

Director

April 30, 2018

/s/ Darren G. Woody

Darren G. Woody

Director

April 30, 2018

/s/ William F. Susetka

William F. Susetka

Director

April 30, 2018

/s/ Brian L. Grass

Brian L. Grass

Chief Financial Officer, Principal Financial Officer and

Principal Accounting Officer

April 30, 2018

/s/ Timothy F. Meeker

Timothy F. Meeker

Director, Chairman of the Board

April 30, 2018

/s/ Krista Berry

Krista Berry

Director

April 30, 2018

/s/ Thurman K. Case

Thurman K. Case

Director

April 30, 2018

AMENDED AND RESTATED GUARANTY

AMENDED AND RESTATED GUARANTY (this "<u>Guaranty</u>"), dated as of March 1, 2018, made by each of the parties listed on the signature pages hereof and each other Person which may from time to time become a party to this Guaranty pursuant to <u>Section 24</u> (collectively, the "<u>Guarantors</u>", and each, a "<u>Guarantor</u>"), in favor of the Guarantied Parties referred to below.

WITNESSETH:

WHEREAS, Helen of Troy L.P., a Texas limited partnership, has entered into an Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of January 16, 2015, among Helen of Troy Limited a Bermuda company ("Limited"), the Lenders party thereto, and Bank of America, N.A., as the Administrative Agent, Swing Line Lender and L/C Issuer (hereinafter, the "Administrative Agent") for the Lenders, as amended by that certain First Amendment to Amended and Restated Credit Agreement, dated as of December 7, 2016 and that certain Second Amendment, Assumption, Consent and Ratification Agreement dated March 1, 2018 (the Second Amendment") (said Credit Agreement, as it has and may further be amended, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time, being the "Credit Agreement", and capitalized terms not defined herein but defined therein being used herein as therein defined); and

WHEREAS, in connection with the Second Amendment, (i) Helen of Troy L.P. has assigned to Helen of Troy Texas Corporation all of its rights and obligations under the Credit Agreement and the other Loan Documents, and (ii) Helen of Troy Texas Corporation has assumed all of Helen of Troy L.P.'s rights and obligations under the Credit Agreement and the other Loan Documents.

WHEREAS, the Borrower and each of the Guarantors are members of the same consolidated group of companies and are engaged in operations which require financing on a basis in which credit can be made available from time to time to the Borrower and the Guarantors, and the Guarantors will derive direct and indirect economic benefit from the Revolving Loans, Swing Line Loans and Letters of Credit under the Credit Agreement; and

WHEREAS, pursuant to the Credit Agreement, the Guarantors executed that certain Guaranty dated as of January 16, 2015 as supplemented by that certain Guaranty Supplement No. 1, dated March 18, 2016 and that certain Guaranty Supplement No. 2, dated December 7, 2016 (collectively, the "Existing Guaranty Agreement"). The parties hereto desire to amend and restate the Existing Guaranty Agreement pursuant to the terms of this Guaranty;

WHEREAS, it is a condition precedent to the obligation of the Lenders to make Loans and issue and/or participate in Letters of Credit under the Credit Agreement that the Guarantors shall have executed and delivered this Guaranty; and

WHEREAS, the Lenders, the Administrative Agent, any Lender or Affiliate of any Lender entering into a Swap Contract (provided that such Lender was a Lender at the time such Swap Contract was entered into) with the Borrower or any Subsidiary of the Borrower (such Swap Contract, a " <u>Guarantied Swap Contract</u>"), and the beneficiaries of each indemnification obligation undertaken by any Loan Party under any Loan Document are herein referred to as the "<u>Guarantied Parties</u>";

NOW, THEREFORE, in consideration of the premises and to induce the Lenders to make Revolving Loans, the Swing Line Lender to make Swing Line Loans and the L/C Issuer to issue Letters of Credit, the Guarantors hereby agree as follows:

SECTION 1. Guaranty. The Guarantors hereby jointly and severally unconditionally and irrevocably guarantee the full and prompt payment when due, whether at stated maturity, by acceleration or otherwise, of, and the performance of, (a) the Obligations, whether now or hereafter existing and whether for principal, interest, fees, expenses or otherwise, (b) all obligations owed to any Guarantied Party pursuant to a Guarantied Swap Contract, excluding any Excluded Swap Obligations of a Guarantor, (c) any and all reasonable out-of-pocket expenses (including, without limitation, reasonable expenses and reasonable counsel fees and expenses of the Administrative Agent and the Lenders) incurred by any of the Guarantied Parties in enforcing any rights under this Guaranty and (d) all present and future amounts that would become due but for the operation of any provision of Debtor Relief Laws, and all present and future accrued and unpaid interest, including, without limitation, all post-petition interest if the Borrower or any Guarantor voluntarily or involuntarily becomes subject to any Debtor Relief Laws (the items set forth in clauses (a), (b), (c) and (d) immediately above being herein referred to as the " Guarantied Obligations "). Upon failure of the Borrower to pay any of the Guarantied Obligations when due after the giving by the Administrative Agent and/or the Lenders of any notice and the expiration of any applicable cure period in each case provided for in the Credit Agreement and other Loan Documents (whether at stated maturity, by acceleration or otherwise), the Guarantors hereby further jointly and severally agree to promptly pay the same after the Guarantors' receipt of notice from the Administrative Agent of the Borrower's failure to pay the same, without any other demand or notice whatsoever, including without limitation, any notice having been given to any Guarantor of either the acceptance by the Guarantied Parties of this Guaranty or the creation or incurrence of any of the Guarantied Obligations. This Guaranty is an absolute guaranty of payment and performance of the Guarantied Obligations and not a guaranty of collection, meaning that it is not necessary for the Guarantied Parties, in order to enforce payment by the Guarantors, first or contemporaneously to accelerate payment of any of the Guarantied Obligations, to institute suit or exhaust any rights against any Loan Party, or to enforce any rights against any Collateral. Notwithstanding anything herein or in any other Loan Document to the contrary, in any action or proceeding involving any state corporate law, or any state or federal bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization or other law affecting the rights of creditors generally, if, as a result of applicable law relating to fraudulent conveyance or fraudulent transfer, including Section 548 of Bankruptcy Code or any applicable provisions of comparable state law (collectively, "Fraudulent Transfer Laws"), the obligations of any Guarantor under this Section 1 would otherwise, after giving effect to (a) all other liabilities of such Guarantor, contingent or otherwise, that are relevant under such Fraudulent Transfer Laws (specifically excluding, however, any liabilities of such Guarantor in respect of intercompany Indebtedness to the Borrower to the extent that such Indebtedness would be discharged in an amount equal to the amount paid by such Guarantor hereunder) and (b) to the value as assets of such Guarantor (as determined under the applicable provisions of such Fraudulent Transfer Laws) of any rights of subrogation, contribution, reimbursement, indemnity or similar rights held by such Guarantor pursuant to (i) applicable requirements of Law, (ii) Section 10 hereof or (iii) any other contractual obligations providing for an equitable allocation among such Guarantor and other Subsidiaries or Affiliates of the Borrower of obligations arising under this Guaranty or other guaranties of the Guarantied Obligations by such parties, be held or determined to be void, invalid or unenforceable, or subordinated to the claims of any other

creditors, on account of the amount of its liability under this <u>Section 1</u>, then the amount of such liability shall, without any further action by such Guarantor, any Lender, the Administrative Agent or any other Person, be automatically limited and reduced to the highest amount that is valid and enforceable and not subordinated to the claims of other creditors as determined in such action or proceeding.

- SECTION 2. <u>Guaranty Absolute</u>. Each Guarantor guarantees that the Guarantied Obligations will be paid strictly in accordance with the terms of the Credit Agreement, the Notes and the other Loan Documents, without set-off or counterclaim, and regardless of any Applicable Law now or hereafter in effect in any jurisdiction affecting any of such terms or the rights of the Guarantied Parties with respect thereto. The liability of each Guarantor under this Guaranty shall be absolute and unconditional irrespective of:
- (a) any lack of validity or enforceability of any provision of any other Loan Document or any other agreement or instrument relating to any Loan Document, or avoidance or subordination of any of the Guarantied Obligations;
- (b) any change in the time, manner or place of payment of, or in any other term of, or any increase in the amount of, all or any of the Guarantied Obligations, or any other amendment or waiver of any term of, or any consent to departure from any requirement of, the Credit Agreement, the Notes or any of the other Loan Documents;
- (c) any exchange, release or non-perfection of any Lien on any collateral for, or any release of any Loan Party or amendment or waiver of any term of any other guaranty of, or any consent to departure from any requirement of any other guaranty of, all or any of the Guarantied Obligations;
- (d) the absence of any attempt to collect any of the Guarantied Obligations from the Borrower or from any other Loan Party or any other action to enforce the same or the election of any remedy by any of the Guarantied Parties;
- (e) any waiver, consent, extension, forbearance or granting of any indulgence by any of the Guarantied Parties with respect to any provision of any other Loan Document;
 - (f) the election by any of the Guarantied Parties in any proceeding under any Debtor Relief Law;
- (g) any borrowing or grant of a security interest by the Borrower, as debtor-in-possession, under any Debtor Relief Law; or
- (h) any other circumstance which might otherwise constitute a legal or equitable discharge or defense of the Borrower or any Guarantor other than payment or performance of the Guarantied Obligations.

SECTION 3. Waiver.

(a) Each Guarantor hereby (i) waives, to the extent permitted by Applicable Law, (A) promptness, diligence, and, except as otherwise provided herein, notice of acceptance and any and all other notices, including, without limitation, notice of intent to accelerate and notice

of acceleration, with respect to any of the Guarantied Obligations or this Guaranty, (B) any requirement that any of the Guarantied Parties protect, secure, perfect or insure any security interest in or other Lien on any property subject thereto or exhaust any right or take any action against the Borrower or any other Person or any collateral, (C) the filing of any claim with a court in the event of receivership or bankruptcy of the Borrower or any other Person, (D) except as otherwise provided herein, protest or notice with respect to nonpayment of all or any of the Guarantied Obligations, (E) the benefit of any statute of limitation relating to the collection of the Obligations against the Borrower, (F) except as otherwise provided herein, all demands whatsoever (and any requirement that demand be made on the Borrower or any other Person as a condition precedent to such Guarantor's obligations hereunder), (G) all rights by which any Guarantor might be entitled to require suit on an accrued right of action in respect of any of the Guarantied Obligations or require suit against the Borrower or any other Guarantor or Person, whether arising pursuant to Section 43.002 of the Texas Civil Practice and Remedies Code, as amended, Section 17.001 of the Texas Civil Practice and Remedies Code, as amended, Rule 31 of the Texas Rules of Civil Procedure, as amended, or otherwise, (H) any defense based upon an election of remedies by any Guarantied Party, or (I) notice of any events or circumstances set forth in clauses (a) through (h) of Section 2 hereof; and (ii) covenants and agrees that, except as otherwise agreed by the parties, this Guaranty will not be discharged except by complete payment and performance of the Guarantied Obligations and any other obligations of such Guarantor contained herein.

- (b) If, in the exercise of any of its rights and remedies in accordance with the provisions of Applicable Law, any of the Guarantied Parties shall forfeit any of its rights or remedies, including, without limitation, its right to enter a deficiency judgment against the Borrower or any other Person, whether because of any Applicable Law pertaining to "election of remedies" or the like, each Guarantor hereby consents to such action by such Guarantied Party and waives any claim against the Guarantied Parties based upon such action. Any election of remedies which, by reason of such election, results in the denial or impairment of the right of such Guarantied Party to seek a deficiency judgment against the Borrower shall not impair the obligation of such Guarantor to pay the full amount of the Guarantied Obligations or any other obligation of such Guarantor contained herein.
- (c) In the event any of the Guarantied Parties shall bid at any foreclosure or trustee's sale or at any private sale permitted by Law or under any of the Loan Documents, to the extent not prohibited by Applicable Law, such Guarantied Party may bid all or less than the amount of the Guarantied Obligations and the amount of such bid, if successful, need not be paid by such Guarantied Party but shall be credited against the Guarantied Obligations.
- (d) Each Guarantor agrees that notwithstanding the foregoing and without limiting the generality of the foregoing if, after the occurrence and during the continuance of an Event of Default, the Guarantied Parties are prevented by Applicable Law from exercising their respective rights to accelerate the maturity of the Guarantied Obligations, to collect interest on the Guarantied Obligations, or to enforce or exercise any other right or remedy with respect to the Guarantied Obligations, or the Administrative Agent is prevented from taking any action to realize on the Collateral, such Guarantor agrees to pay to the Administrative Agent for the account of the Guarantied Parties, upon demand therefor, for application to the Guarantied Obligations, the amount that would otherwise have been due and payable had such rights and remedies been permitted to be exercised by the Guarantied Parties.

- (e) Each Guarantor hereby assumes responsibility for keeping itself informed of the financial condition of the Borrower and of each other Loan Party, and of all other circumstances bearing upon the risk of nonpayment of the Guarantied Obligations or any part thereof, that diligent inquiry would reveal. Each Guarantor hereby agrees that the Guarantied Parties shall have no duty to advise any Guarantor of information known to any of the Guarantied Parties regarding such condition or any such circumstance. In the event that any of the Guarantied Parties in its sole discretion undertakes at any time or from time to time to provide any such information to any Guarantor, such Guarantied Party shall be under no obligation (i) to undertake any investigation not a part of its regular business routine, (ii) to disclose any information which, pursuant to accepted or reasonable banking or commercial finance practices, such Guarantied Party wishes to maintain as confidential, or (iii) to make any other or future disclosures of such information or any other information to such Guarantor.
- (f) Each Guarantor consents and agrees that the Guarantied Parties shall be under no obligation to marshal any assets in favor of any Guarantor or otherwise in connection with obtaining payment of any or all of the Guarantied Obligations from any Person or source.
- SECTION 4. <u>Representations and Warranties</u>. Each Guarantor hereby represents and warrants to the Guarantied Parties that the representations and warranties set forth in Article V of the Credit Agreement as they relate to such Guarantor or to the Loan Documents to which such Guarantor is a party are true and correct in all material respects in the manner specified in the Credit Agreement and the Guarantied Parties shall be entitled to rely on each of them as if they were fully set forth herein.
- SECTION 5. <u>Amendments, Etc.</u> No amendment or waiver of any provision of this Guaranty nor consent to any departure by any Guarantor herefrom shall in any event be effective unless the same shall be in writing, approved by the Required Lenders (or by all the Lenders where the approval of each Lender is required under the Credit Agreement) and signed by the Administrative Agent, and then such waiver or consent shall be effective only in the specific instance and for the specific purpose for which given.
- SECTION 6. <u>Addresses for Notices</u>. All notices and other communications provided for hereunder shall be effectuated in the manner provided for in Section 10.02 of the Credit Agreement, <u>provided</u> that if a notice or communication hereunder is sent to a Guarantor, said notice shall be addressed to such Guarantor, in care of the Borrower's then current address (or facsimile number) for notice under the Credit Agreement.

SECTION 7. No Waiver; Remedies .

- (a) No failure on the part of any Guarantied Party to exercise, and no delay in exercising, any right hereunder shall operate as a waiver thereof; nor shall any single or partial exercise of any right hereunder preclude any other or further exercise thereof or the exercise of any other right. The remedies herein provided are cumulative and not exclusive of any remedies provided by Applicable Law or any of the other Loan Documents.
- (b) No waiver by the Guarantied Parties of any default shall operate as a waiver of any other default or the same default on a future occasion, and no action by any of the Guarantied Parties permitted hereunder shall in way affect or impair any of the rights of the

Guarantied Parties or the obligations of any Guarantor under this Guaranty or under any of the other Loan Documents, except as specifically set forth in any such waiver. Any determination by a court of competent jurisdiction of the amount of any principal and/or interest or other amount constituting any of the Guarantied Obligations shall be conclusive and binding on each Guarantor irrespective of whether such Guarantor was a party to the suit or action in which such determination was made.

SECTION 8. Right of Set-off. Upon the occurrence and during the continuance of any Event of Default under the Credit Agreement, each of the Guarantied Parties is hereby authorized at any time and from time to time, to the fullest extent permitted by Applicable Law, to set-off and apply any and all deposits (general or special (except trust and escrow accounts), time or demand, provisional or final) at any time held and other Indebtedness at any time owing by such Guarantied Party to or for the credit or the account of each Guarantor against any and all of the obligations of such Guarantor now or hereafter existing under this Guaranty, irrespective of whether or not such Guarantied Party shall have made any demand under this Guaranty; provided, however, such Guarantied Party shall promptly notify such Guarantor and the Borrower after such set-off and the application made by such Guarantied Party. The rights of each Guarantied Party under this Section 8 are in addition to other rights and remedies (including, without limitation, other rights of set-off) which such Guarantied Party may have.

SECTION 9. Continuing Guaranty; Transfer of Notes. This Guaranty (a)(i) is a continuing guaranty and shall remain in full force and effect until the date that the Aggregate Commitments have been terminated, all Loans and other Obligations have been paid in full and no Letters of Credit are outstanding and all obligations and liabilities in respect of Swap Obligations owed to any Guarantied Party have been paid in full (the "Release Date") and (ii) binding upon each Guarantor, its permitted successors and assigns, and (b) inures to the benefit of and be enforceable by the Guarantied Parties and their respective successors, permitted transferees, and permitted assigns. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing clause (b), each of the Guarantied Parties may assign or otherwise transfer any Note held by it or the Guarantied Obligations owed to it to any other Person, and such other Person shall thereupon become vested with all the rights in respect thereof granted to such Guarantied Party herein or otherwise with respect to such of the Notes and the Guarantied Obligations so transferred or assigned, subject, however, to compliance with the provisions of Section 10.06 of the Credit Agreement in respect of assignments. Except as the result of the consummation of a transaction permitted under Section 7.04 or 7.05 of the Credit Agreement, no Guarantor may assign any of its obligations under this Guaranty without first obtaining the written consent of the Lenders as set forth in the Credit Agreement. If upon any merger, dissolution, liquidation or consolidation permitted under Section 7.04 of the Credit Agreement or any Disposition permitted by Section 7.05 of the Credit Agreement, a Guarantor no longer exists or is no longer a Subsidiary of Limited, such Guarantor shall be released of its obligations hereunder.

SECTION 10. <u>Reimbursement</u>. To the extent that any Guarantor shall be required hereunder to pay a portion of the Guarantied Obligations exceeding the greater of (a) the amount of the economic benefit actually received by such Guarantor from the Loans and the Letters of Credit and (b) the amount such Guarantor would otherwise have paid if such Guarantor had paid the aggregate amount of the Guarantied Obligations (excluding the amount thereof repaid by the Borrower) in the same proportion as such Guarantor's net worth at the date enforcement is sought hereunder bears to the aggregate net worth of all the Guarantors at the date enforcement is

sought hereunder, then such Guarantor shall be reimbursed by such other Guarantors for the amount of such excess, pro rata, based on the respective net worths of such other Guarantors at the date enforcement hereunder is sought. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary, each Guarantor agrees that the Guarantied Obligations may at any time and from time to time exceed the amount of the liability of such Guarantor hereunder without impairing its guaranty herein or effecting the rights and remedies of the Guarantied Parties hereunder. This Section 10 is intended only to define the relative rights of the Guarantors, and nothing set forth in this Section 10 is intended to or shall impair. the obligations of the Guarantors, jointly and severally, to pay to the Guarantied Parties the Guarantied Obligations as and when the same shall become due and payable in accordance with the terms hereof.

SECTION 11. Reinstatement. This Guaranty shall remain in full force and effect and continue to be effective should any petition be filed by or against any Loan Party for liquidation or reorganization, should any Loan Party become insolvent or make an assignment for the benefit of creditors or should a receiver or trustee be appointed for all or any significant part of any Loan Party's assets, and shall, to the fullest extent permitted by Applicable Law, continue to be effective or be reinstated, as the case may be, if at any time payment and performance of the Guarantied Obligations, or any part thereof, is, pursuant to Applicable Law, rescinded or reduced in amount, or must otherwise be restored or returned by any obligees of the Guarantied Obligations or such part thereof, whether as a "voidable preference," "fraudulent transfer," or otherwise, all as though such payment or performance had not been made. In the event that any payment, or any part thereof, is rescinded, reduced, restored or returned, the Guarantied Obligations shall, to the fullest extent permitted by law, be reinstated and deemed reduced only by such amount paid and not so rescinded, reduced, restored or returned.

SECTION 12. GOVERNING LAW.

- (a) THIS GUARANTY SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED IN ACCORDANCE WITH, THE LAW OF THE STATE OF TEXAS APPLICABLE TO AGREEMENTS MADE AND TO BE PERFORMED ENTIRELY WITHIN SUCH STATE; PROVIDED THAT EACH PARTY SHALL RETAIN ALL RIGHTS ARISING UNDER FEDERAL LAW.
- (b) The parties hereto agree that Chapter 346 (other than 346.004) of the Texas Finance Code (which regulates certain revolving credit accounts and revolving tri-party accounts) shall not apply to Loans under this Guaranty.
- (c) ANY LEGAL ACTION OR PROCEEDING WITH RESPECT TO THIS GUARANTY OR ANY OTHER LOAN DOCUMENT MAY BE BROUGHT IN THE COURTS OF THE STATE OF TEXAS SITTING IN DALLAS COUNTY, TEXAS OR IN THE UNITED STATES DISTRICT COURT FOR THE NORTHERN DISTRICT OF TEXAS (DALLAS DIVISION), AND BY EXECUTION, DELIVERY AND ACCEPTANCE OF THIS GUARANTY, EACH GUARANTOR, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER CONSENTS, FOR ITSELF AND IN RESPECT OF ITS PROPERTY, TO THE NON-EXCLUSIVE JURISDICTION OF THOSE COURTS. EACH GUARANTOR, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER IRREVOCABLY WAIVES ANY OBJECTION, INCLUDING ANY OBJECTION TO THE LAYING OF VENUE OR BASED ON THE GROUNDS OF FORUM NON CONVENIENS, WHICH IT MAY NOW OR

HEREAFTER HAVE TO THE BRINGING OF ANY ACTION OR PROCEEDING IN SUCH JURISDICTION IN RESPECT OF ANY LOAN DOCUMENT OR OTHER DOCUMENT RELATED THERETO. EACH GUARANTOR, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER WAIVES PERSONAL SERVICE OF ANY SUMMONS, COMPLAINT OR OTHER PROCESS, WHICH MAY BE MADE BY ANY OTHER MEANS PERMITTED BY THE LAW OF SUCH STATE.

SECTION 13. Waiver of Jury Trial. EACH GUARANTOR, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER HEREBY (OR BY ACCEPTANCE HEREOF) EXPRESSLY WAIVES ANY RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND, ACTION OR CAUSE OF ACTION ARISING UNDER ANY LOAN DOCUMENT OR IN ANY WAY CONNECTED WITH OR RELATED OR INCIDENTAL TO THE DEALINGS OF ANY ONE OR MORE OF EACH GUARANTOR, THE BORROWER, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER WITH RESPECT TO ANY LOAN DOCUMENT, OR THE TRANSACTIONS RELATED THERETO, IN EACH CASE WHETHER NOW EXISTING OR HEREAFTER ARISING, AND WHETHER FOUNDED IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR OTHERWISE; AND EACH OF THE GUARANTORS, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER HEREBY AGREES AND CONSENTS THAT ANY SUCH CLAIM, DEMAND, ACTION OR CAUSE OF ACTION SHALL BE DECIDED BY COURT TRIAL WITHOUT A JURY, AND THAT ANY OF THE GUARANTORS, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER MAY FILE AN ORIGINAL COUNTERPART OR A COPY OF THIS SECTION WITH ANY COURT AS WRITTEN EVIDENCE OF THE CONSENT OF EACH GUARANTOR, THE ADMINISTRATIVE AGENT AND EACH LENDER TO THE WAIVER OF THEIR RIGHT TO TRIAL BY JURY.

- SECTION 14. <u>Section Titles</u>. The Section titles contained in this Guaranty are and shall be without substantive meaning or content of any kind whatsoever and are not a part of this Guaranty.
- SECTION 15. <u>Execution in Counterparts</u>. This Guaranty may be executed in any number of counterparts and by different parties hereto in separate counterparts, each of which when so executed and delivered shall be deemed to be an original and all of which taken together shall constitute one and the same Guaranty.
- SECTION 16. <u>Miscellaneous</u>. All references herein to the Borrower or to any Guarantor shall include their respective successors and assigns, including, without limitation, a receiver, trustee or debtor-in-possession of or for the Borrower or such Guarantor. All references to the singular shall be deemed to include the plural where the context so requires.

SECTION 17. Subrogation and Subordination.

(a) <u>Subrogation</u>. Notwithstanding any reference to subrogation contained herein to the contrary, until the Release Date, each Guarantor hereby irrevocably waives any claim or other rights which it may have or hereafter acquire against the Borrower that arise from the existence, payment, performance or enforcement of such Guarantor's obligations under this Guaranty, including, without limitation, any right of subrogation, reimbursement, exoneration, contribution, indemnification, any right to participate in any claim or remedy of any Lender against the Borrower or any collateral which any Lender now has or hereafter acquires, whether

or not such claim, remedy or right arises in equity, or under contract, statutes or common law, including without limitation, the right to take or receive from the Borrower, directly or indirectly, in cash or other property or by set-off or in any other manner, payment or security on account of such claim or other rights. If any amount shall be paid to any Guarantor in violation of the preceding sentence and the Guarantied Obligations shall not have been paid in full, such amount shall be deemed to have been paid to such Guarantor for the benefit of, and held in trust for the benefit of, the Lenders, and shall forthwith be paid to the Administrative Agent to be credited and applied upon the Guarantied Obligations, whether matured or unmatured, in accordance with the terms of the Credit Agreement. Each Guarantor acknowledges that it will receive direct and indirect benefits from the financing arrangements contemplated by the Credit Agreement and that the waiver set forth in this Section 17 is knowingly made in contemplation of such benefits.

- (b) <u>Subordination</u>. All debt and other liabilities of the Borrower to any Guarantor ("<u>Borrower Debt</u>") are expressly subordinate and junior to the Guarantied Obligations and any instruments evidencing the Borrower Debt to the extent provided below.
 - (i) Until the Release Date, each Guarantor agrees that it will not request, demand, accept, or receive (by set-off or other manner) any payment amount, credit or reduction of all or any part of the amounts owing under the Borrower Debt or any security therefor, except as specifically allowed pursuant to clause (ii) below;
 - (ii) Notwithstanding the provisions of clause (i) above, the Borrower may pay to the Guarantors and the Guarantors may request, demand, accept and receive and retain from the Borrower payments, credits or reductions of all or any part of the amounts owing under the Borrower Debt or any security therefor on the Borrower Debt, provided that the Borrower's right to pay and the Guarantors' right to receive any such amount shall automatically and be immediately suspended and cease (A) upon the occurrence and during the continuance of an Event of Default or (B) if, after taking into account the effect of such payment, an Event of Default would occur and be continuing. The Guarantors' right to receive amounts under this clause (ii) (including any amounts which theretofore may have been suspended) shall automatically be reinstated at such time as the Event of Default which was the basis of such suspension has been cured or waived (provided that no subsequent Event of Default has occurred) or such earlier date, if any, as the Administrative Agent gives notice to the Guarantors of reinstatement by the Required Lenders, in the Required Lenders' sole discretion;
 - (iii) If any Guarantor receives any payment on the Borrower Debt in violation of this Guaranty, such Guarantor will hold such payment in trust for the Lenders and will immediately deliver such payment to the Administrative Agent; and
 - (iv) In the event of the commencement or joinder of any suit, action or proceeding of any type (judicial or otherwise) or proceeding under any Debtor Relief Law against the Borrower (an "Insolvency Proceeding") and subject to court orders issued pursuant to the Bankruptcy Code, the Guarantied Obligations shall first be paid, discharged and performed in full before any payment or performance is made upon the Borrower Debt notwithstanding any other provisions which may be made in such Insolvency Proceeding. In the event of any Insolvency Proceeding, each Guarantor will at any time prior to the Release Date (A) file, at the request of any Guarantied Party, any

claim, proof of claim or similar instrument necessary to enforce the Borrower's obligation to pay the Borrower Debt, and (B) hold in trust for and pay to the Guarantied Parties any and all monies, obligations, property, stock dividends or other assets received in any such proceeding on account of the Borrower Debt in order that the Guarantied Parties may apply such monies or the cash proceeds of such other assets to the Obligations.

SECTION 18. <u>Guarantor Insolvency</u>. Should any Guarantor voluntarily seek, consent to, or acquiesce in the benefits of any Debtor Relief Law or become a party to or be made the subject of any proceeding provided for by any Debtor Relief Law (other than as a creditor or claimant) that could suspend or otherwise adversely affect the rights of any Guarantied Party granted hereunder, then, the obligations of such Guarantor under this Guaranty shall be, as between such Guarantor and such Guarantied Party, a fully-matured, due, and payable obligation of such Guarantor to such Guarantied Party (without regard to whether there is an Event of Default under the Credit Agreement or whether any part of the Guarantied Obligations is then due and owing by the Borrower to such Guarantied Party), payable in full by such Guarantor to such Guarantied Party upon demand, which shall be the estimated amount owing in respect of the contingent claim created hereunder.

SECTION 19. Rate Provision. It is not the intention of any Guarantied Party to make an agreement violative of the laws of any applicable jurisdiction relating to usury. Regardless of any provision in this Guaranty, no Guarantied Party shall ever be entitled to contract, charge, receive, collect or apply, as interest on the Guarantied Obligations, any amount in excess of the Highest Lawful Rate. In no event shall any Guarantor be obligated to pay any amount in excess of the Highest Lawful Rate. If from any circumstance the Administrative Agent or any Guarantied Party shall ever receive, collect or apply anything of value deemed excess interest under Applicable Law, an amount equal to such excess shall be applied to the reduction of the principal amount of outstanding Revolving Loans, Swing Line Loans, L/C Borrowings and any remainder shall be promptly refunded to the payor. In determining whether or not interest paid or payable with respect to the Guarantied Obligations, under any specified contingency, exceeds the Highest Lawful Rate, the Guarantors and the Guarantied Parties shall, to the maximum extent permitted by Applicable Law, (a) characterize any non-principal payment as an expense, fee or premium rather than as interest. (b) amortize, prorate, allocate and spread the total amount of interest throughout the full term of such Guarantied Obligations so that the interest paid on account of such Guarantied Obligations does not exceed the Highest Lawful Rate and/or (c) allocate interest between portions of such Guarantied Obligations; provided that if the Guarantied Obligations are paid and performed in full prior to the end of the full contemplated term thereof, and if the interest received for the actual period of existence thereof exceeds the Highest Lawful Rate, the Guarantied Parties shall refund to the payor the amount of such excess or credit the amount of such excess against the total principal amount owing, and, in such event, no Guarantied Party shall be subject to any penalties provided by any laws for contracting for, charging or receiving interest in excess of the Highest Lawful Rate.

SECTION 20. <u>Severability</u>. Any provision of this Guaranty which is for any reason prohibited or found or held invalid or unenforceable by any court or governmental agency shall be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity or unenforceability, without invalidating the remaining provisions hereof in such jurisdiction or affecting the validity or enforceability of such provision in any other jurisdiction.

SECTION 21. Taxes.

- (a) Any and all payments by or on account of any obligations of the Guarantors hereunder shall be made free and clear of and without reduction or withholding for any Indemnified Taxes or Other Taxes, <u>provided</u> that if any Guarantor shall be required by Applicable Law to deduct any Indemnified Taxes (including any Other Taxes) from such payments, then (i) the sum payable shall be increased as necessary so that after making all required deductions (including deductions applicable to additional sums payable under this Section) the applicable Guarantied Party receives an amount equal to the sum it would have received had no such deductions been made, (ii) such Guarantor shall make such deductions and (iii) such Guarantor shall timely pay the full amount deducted to the relevant Governmental Authority in accordance with Applicable Law.
- (b) Without limiting the provisions of subsection (a) above, the Guarantors shall timely pay any Other Taxes to the relevant Governmental Authority in accordance with Applicable Law.
- (c) The Guarantors shall indemnify each Guarantied Party, within 10 days after demand therefor, for the full amount of any Indemnified Taxes or Other Taxes (including Indemnified Taxes or Other Taxes imposed or asserted on or attributable to amounts payable under this Section) paid by such Guarantied Party and any penalties, interest and reasonable expenses arising therefrom or with respect thereto, whether or not such Indemnified Taxes or Other Taxes were correctly or legally imposed or asserted by the relevant Governmental Authority. A certificate as to the amount of such payment or liability delivered to the Guarantors by such Guarantied Party (with a copy to the Administrative Agent), or by the Administrative Agent on its own behalf or on behalf of any Guarantied Party shall be conclusive absent manifest error.
- (d) As soon as practicable after any payment of Indemnified Taxes or Other Taxes by any Guarantor to a Governmental Authority, such Guarantor shall deliver to the Administrative Agent the original or a certified copy of a receipt issued by such Governmental Authority evidencing such payment, a copy of the return reporting such payment or other evidence of such payment reasonably satisfactory to the Administrative Agent.
- (e) If any Guarantied Party determines, in its sole discretion, that it has received a refund of any Taxes or Other Taxes as to which it has been indemnified by any Guarantor or with respect to which any Guarantor has paid additional amounts pursuant to this Section, it shall pay to such Guarantor an amount equal to such refund (but only to the extent of indemnity payments made, or additional amounts paid, by such Guarantor under this Section with respect to the Taxes or Other Taxes giving rise to such refund), net of all out-of-pocket expenses of such Guarantied Party, and without interest (other than any interest paid by the relevant Governmental Authority with respect to such refund), provided that such Guarantor, upon the request of such Guarantied Party, agrees to repay the amount paid over to such Guarantor (plus any penalties, interest or other charges imposed by the relevant Governmental Authority) to such Guarantied Party in the event such Guarantied Party is required to repay such refund to such Governmental Authority. This subsection shall not be construed to require any Guarantied Party to make available its tax returns (or any other information relating to its taxes that it deems confidential) to the Guarantors or any other Person.

(f) The obligations of each Guarantor and Guarantied Party under this <u>Section 21</u> shall survive termination of the Aggregate Commitments and repayment of all Guarantied Obligations.

SECTION 22. <u>Judgment Currency</u>. If, for the purposes of obtaining judgment in any court, it is necessary to convert a sum due hereunder in one currency into another currency, the rate of exchange used shall be that at which in accordance with normal banking procedures the Administrative Agent could purchase the first currency with such other currency on the Business Day preceding that on which final judgment is given. The obligation of the Guarantors in respect of any such sum due from it to the Guarantied Parties hereunder shall, notwithstanding any judgment in a currency (the "Judgment Currency") other than that in which such sum is denominated in accordance with the applicable provisions of the Credit Agreement (the "Agreement Currency"), be discharged only to the extent that on the Business Day following receipt by the Administrative Agent of any sum adjudged to be so due in the Judgment Currency, the Administrative Agent may in accordance with normal banking procedures purchase the Agreement Currency with the Judgment Currency. To the extent permitted by Applicable Law, if the amount of the Agreement Currency so purchased is less than the sum originally due to the Administrative Agent from the Guarantors in the Agreement Currency after taking into account any set-offs or counterclaims of any Loan Party against the Person to whom such obligation was owing on which a final judgment has been rendered, the Guarantors agree, as a separate obligation and notwithstanding any such judgment, to indemnify the Administrative Agent or the Person to whom such obligation was owing against such loss. If the amount of the Agreement Currency so purchased is greater than the sum originally due to the Administrative Agent in such currency, the Administrative Agent agrees to return the amount of any excess to the Guarantors (or to any other Person who may be entitled thereto under Applicable Law).

SECTION 23. <u>Keepwell</u>. Each Guarantor which is a Qualified ECP Guarantor hereby acknowledges and agrees to its undertakings under Section 10.21 of the Credit Agreement.

SECTION 24. <u>Additional Guarantors</u>. Upon the execution and delivery by any other Person of a Guaranty Supplement in substantially the form of <u>Exhibit A</u> (a "<u>Guaranty Supplement</u>"), such Person shall become a "Guarantor" hereunder with the same force and effect as if originally named as a Guarantor herein. The execution and delivery of any Guaranty Supplement shall not require the consent of any other Guarantor hereunder. The rights and obligations of each Guarantor hereunder shall remain in full force and effect notwithstanding the addition of any new Guarantor as a party to this Guaranty.

SECTION 25. <u>Amendment and Restatement</u>. The Guarantors previously executed and delivered the Existing Guaranty Agreement in favor of the Guarantied Parties (as defined in the Existing Guaranty Agreement). This Guaranty is an amendment and restatement of the Existing Guaranty Agreement and is a "Guaranty" as defined in the Credit Agreement. Each Guarantor affirms its obligations pursuant to the Existing Guaranty Agreement and agrees that this Guaranty amends and restates the Existing Guaranty Agreement in its entirety. This Guaranty is not intended as, and shall not be construed as, a release or novation of any obligation of any Guarantor pursuant to the Existing Guaranty Agreement.

SECTION 26. <u>ENTIRE AGREEMENT</u>. THIS GUARANTY AND THE OTHER LOAN DOCUMENTS REPRESENT THE FINAL AGREEMENT BETWEEN THE PARTIES

REGARDING THE SUBJECT MATTER HEREIN AND MAY NOT BE CONTRADICTED BY EVIDENCE OF PRIOR, CONTEMPORANEOUS OR SUBSEQUENT ORAL AGREEMENTS BETWEEN THE PARTIES. THERE ARE NO UNWRITTEN ORAL AGREEMENTS BETWEEN THE PARTIES.

[REMAINDER OF PAGE LEFT INTENTIONALLY BLANK]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, each Guarantor has caused this Guaranty to be duly executed and delivered by its duly authorized officer on the date first above written.

GUARANTORS:

HELEN OF TROY L.P., a Texas limited partnership

By: HELEN OF TROY NEVADA CORPORATION, a Nevada corporation, General Partner

HELEN OF TROY LIMITED,

a Bermuda company

HELEN OF TROY LIMITED,

a Barbados corporation

HOT NEVADA, INC.,

a Nevada corporation

HELEN OF TROY NEVADA CORPORATION,

a Nevada corporation

HELEN OF TROY TEXAS CORPORATION,

a Texas corporation

IDELLE LABS LTD.,

a Texas limited partnership

By: HELEN OF TROY NEVADA CORPORATION, a Nevada corporation, General Partner

OXO INTERNATIONAL LTD.,

a Texas limited partnership

By: HELEN OF TROY NEVADA CORPORATION, a Nevada corporation, General Partner

PUR WATER PURIFICATION PRODUCTS, INC.,

a Nevada corporation

KAZ, INC.,

a New York corporation

KAZ USA, INC.,

a Massachusetts corporation

KAZ CANADA, INC.,

a Massachusetts corporation

STEEL TECHNOLOGY, LLC,

an Oregon limited liability company

HD HOLDING INC.,

a Nevada corporation

Signature Page to Guaranty

By: /s/ Brian L. Grass

Brian L. Grass

Title for all: Chief Financial Officer

HELEN OF TROY MACAO COMMERCIAL OFFSHORE LIMITED, a Macau corporation

By: /s/ Vincent D. Carson

Vincent D. Carson Manager

| NOTARIAI | CERTIFICATE OF | Brian I Grace | |
|------------|----------------|----------------|--|
| INCLANIAL. | CINTILICATION | DHall L. Chass | |

NOTARY PUBLIC DO HEREBY CERTIFY AND ATTEST that on the day of the date hereof personally came and appeared before me Brian L. Grass, the duly authorized Chief Financial Officer of Helen of Troy Limited, a Barbados corporation, one of the executing parties to the within written document and did in my presence sign and deliver the same as and for his free and voluntary act and deed.

IN FAITH AND TESTIMONY WHEREOF I the said <u>Rosemary Vasquez</u> have hereunto set and subscribed my name and caused my Seal of Office to be hereunto put and affixed this <u>27</u> day of <u>February</u>, 2018.

Signature Page to Guaranty

Signed Sealed and Delivered as a
Deed by Helen of Troy Limited,
a Barbados company,
by Order of the Board

/s/ Brian L. Grass

Name in print
Brian L. Grass, Chief Financial Officer

[SEAL]

In the presence of:

/s/ Rosemary Vasquez

Notary Public

GUARANTY SUPPLEMENT NO. ___

| THIS GUARANTY SUPPLEMENT NO. | (this "Guaranty Supplement") is made as of |
|---|--|
| , to the Amended and Restated Guaranty of | lated as of March 1, 2018 (such agreement, together with |
| all amendments and restatements, the "Guaranty"), amon | ng the initial signatories thereto and each other Person |
| which from time to time thereafter became a party thereto | pursuant to Section 24 thereof (each, individually, a ' |
| Guarantor" and, collectively, the "Guarantors"), in favor o | f the Guarantied Parties (as defined in the Guaranty). |

BACKGROUND.

Capitalized terms not otherwise defined herein have the meaning specified in the Guaranty. The Guaranty provides that additional parties may become Guarantors under the Guaranty by execution and delivery of this form of Guaranty Supplement. Pursuant to the provisions of <u>Section 24</u> of the Guaranty, the undersigned is becoming an Additional Guarantor under the Guaranty. The undersigned desires to become a Guarantor under the Guaranty in order to induce the Guarantied Parties to continue to make credit extensions and accommodations under the Loan Documents

AGREEMENT.

NOW, THEREFORE, the undersigned agrees with the Administrative Agent and each other Guarantied Party as follows:

SECTION 1. In accordance with the Guaranty, the undersigned hereby becomes a Guarantor under the Guaranty with the same force and effect as if it were an original signatory thereto as a Guarantor and the undersigned hereby (a) agrees to all the terms and provisions of the Guaranty applicable to it as a Guarantor thereunder and (b) represents and warrants that the representations and warranties made by it as a Guarantor thereunder are true and correct on and as of the date hereof. Each reference to a "Guarantor" or an "Additional Guarantor" in the Guaranty shall be deemed to include the undersigned.

SECTION 2. Except as expressly supplemented hereby, the Guaranty shall remain in full force and effect in accordance with its terms.

SECTION 3. THIS GUARANTY SUPPLEMENT AND THE GUARANTY SHALL BE GOVERNED BY, AND CONSTRUED AND INTERPRETED IN ACCORDANCE WITH, THE LAW OF THE STATE OF TEXAS.

SECTION 4. This Guaranty Supplement hereby incorporates by reference the provisions of the Guaranty, which provisions are deemed to be a part hereof, and this Guaranty Supplement shall be deemed to be a part of the Guaranty.

Exhibit A to Guaranty

SECTION 5. This Guaranty Supplement may be executed by the parties hereto in several counterparts, each of which shall be deemed to be an original and all of which shall constitute together but one and the same agreement.

THE REMAINDER OF THIS PAGE IS INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK .

Exhibit A to Guaranty

EXECUTED as of the date above first written.

| ADDRESS: | [ADDITIONAL GUARANTOR] |
|---|------------------------------|
| Attention: | By: Print Name: Print Title: |
| ACCEPTED AND AGREED TO BY: BANK OF AMERICA, N.A., as Administrative Agent | |
| By: Print Name: Print Title: | |
| Exhibit A t | o Guaranty |

FIRST AMENDMENT TO HELEN OF TROY LIMITE D 2008 EMPLOYEE STOCK PURCHASE PLAN

This First Amendment (this "<u>Amendment</u>") to Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "<u>Plan</u>") is approved by the Board of Directors of Helen of Troy Limited on this <u>25</u> day of <u>August</u>, 2009 and is effective as of the same date.

Article I DEFINIT IONS

All capitalized terms not defined h erein shall have the meaning assigned to them in the Plan.

Article II AMENDMENTS

- 1. <u>Section 1</u>. The following sentence is hereby added immed iate ly following the second sentence of Section 1 of the Plan:
 - "This Plan also authorizes the grant of options t hat do not qualify under Section 423 of the Code (the "Non-423 Plan") pursuant to the rules, procedures, or sub plans adopted by the Committee designed to accommodate the specific requirements of la ws and procedures in non-United S tates jurisdictions. Except as otherwise indicated, the Section 423 Plan (as defined below) and the Non-423 Plan will operate and be administered in the same manner."
- **2.** Section 2(g). The following sentence is hereby added immediately following the first sentence of Section 2(g) of the Plan:

"If a Subsidiary has been design ated by the Board or Committee as eligible to participate in this Plan, the Committee shall determine whether such Designat ed Subsidiary shall participate in the Section 423 Plan or the Non-423 Plan."

- 3. <u>Section 2(r), 2 (s) and 2(t)</u>. The following definitions are hereby added in Section 2 of the Plan in alphabetical order, as follows:
 - "(r) "Max imum Off ering" shall mean, with r espect to some or all Participants in the Non-423 Plan, a maximum number or value of shares of Common Stock made available in a certain period (e.g., 12-month period) in specified countries, locations or Designated Subsidiaries.
 - (s) "Non -423 Plan" shall mean an employee s tock purchase plan which does not me et the requirements set for th in Section 423 of the Code.

- (t) "Section 423 Plan" shall mean an employee stock purchase plan which is designed to meet the requirements set forth in Section 423 of the Code. The provisions of the Section 423 Plan shall be construed, administered and enforced in accordance with Section 423 of the Code."
- **Section 4.1.** Section 4.1 of the Plan is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:
 - An Employee who is eligible to participate in this Plan in accordance with Section 3 may become a Participant by filing and completing the appropriate form or following the procedures prescribed by the Committee, in each case, on a date prescribed by the Committee prior to an applicable Entry Date. An eligible Employee may authorize payroll deductions at the rate of any whole percentage of the Employee's Compensation, not to exceed fifteen percent (15%) of the Employee s Compensation, or such lesser percentage as specified by the Committee as applied to an Entry Date or Option Period. An eligible Employee may authorize other contributions rather than payroll deductions to the extent permitted by the Committee for Participants in the Non-423 Plan (or the Section 423 Plan if permitted under the regulations for Section 423 of the Code). All payroll deductions may be held by the Company and comming 1 ed with its other corporate funds. Payroll deductions under the Non-423 Plan (or the Section 423 Plan if permitted under the reg u lations for Section 423 of the Code) may be segregated from the Company's other corporate funds, where, as determined by the Committee, local law requires segregation of such accounts. No interest shall be paid or credited to the Participant with respect to such payroll deductions except where required by local law as determined by the Committee. Interest may be paid or credited to the Participant with respect to payroll deductions where required by local law, as determ i ned by the Committee, for Participants in the Non-423 Plan (or the Sec t ion 423 Plan if permitted under the regulations for Section 423 of the Code). As e parate bookkeeping account for each Participant shall be maintained by the Company under this Plan and the amount of each Participant's payroll deductions shall be credited to such account. A Participant may not make any additional payments into such account. An actual account for each Participan t may be maintained by the Company under this Plan where required by local law, as determined by the Committee, for Participants in the Non-423 Plan (or the Section 423 Plan if permitted under the regulations for Section 423 of the Code).
- 5. Section 4.3. The following provision is hereby added immediately following Section 4.2 of the Plan:
 - "4.3. Any references to payroll deductions in the Plan shall be read as references to payroll deductions or other contributions. Any references in the Plan to the payment of interest (or lack thereof) shall be read in accordance with Section 4.1 of the Plan."

Section 5.1. The following sentence is hereby added immediate ly following the second sentence of Section 5.1 of the Plan:

"The Committee may also specify a Maximum Offering."

7. Section 5.5. The following sentences are hereby added immediately following the third sentence of Section 5.5 of the Plan:

"If the tota 1 number of shares of Common Stock for which options granted under this Plan are exercisable exceeds the Maximum Offering (if any), the number of shares which may be purchased under options granted on the Entry Date shall be reduced on a pro rata basis in as uniform manner as shall be practicable and equitable. In this event, payroll ded u ct i ons shall also be reduced or refunded accordingly."

Article III GENERAL

Except as expressly set forth herein, this Amendment sha ll not by implication or otherwise alter, modify, amend or in any way affect any of the terms, conditions, obligations, covenants or agreements contained in the Plan, all of which are ratified and affirmed in all respects and shall continue in full fo rce and effect.

SECOND AMENDMENT TO HELEN OF TROY LIMITED 2008 EMPLOYEE STOCK PURCHASE PLAN

This Second Amendment ("Second Amendment") to the Helen of Troy Limited 2008 Employee Stock Purchase Plan (the "Plan") is approved by the Board of Directors of Helen of Troy Limited on this 8th day of November, 2017 and is effective as of January 1, 2018.

Article I DEFINITIONS

All capitalized terms not defined herein shall have the meaning assigned to them in the Plan.

Article II AMENDMENTS

- 1. <u>Section 2(f).</u> Section 2(f) of the Plan is hereby amended and restated in its entirety to read as follows:
- "2(f). "Compensation" shall mean an Employee's wages or salary paid directly by (or through the payroll provider of) the Company or a Designated Subsidiary, and which are reportable as wages or other compensation on the Employee's Form W-2 issued by the Company or a Designated Subsidiary, plus pre-tax contributions of the Employee under a cash or deferred arrangement (401(k) plan) or cafeteria plan maintained by the Company or a Designated Subsidiary, but excluding, however, (a) non-cash fringe benefits, (b) special payments as determined by the Committee (e.g., moving expenses, unused vacation, severance pay), (c) income from the exercise of stock options or other stock-based awards, stock purchases, or from the vesting, settlement or other event related to stock-based awards, (d) income from bonuses and (e) any other items of Compensation as determined by the Committee. Consistent with Section 13 of the Plan, the Committee shall have sole and absolute discretion to determine the application of this definition to Participants in non-United States jurisdictions, in a uniform and nondiscriminatory basis in accordance with Section 423 of the Code to the extent the option is intended to qualify under Section 423 of the Code."
- 2. <u>Section 4.4.</u> The following provision is hereby added immediately following Section 4.3 of the Plan:
 - "4.4. Subject to the discretion of the Committee, if a Participant goes on a leave of absence during which the Participant receives Compensation, payroll deductions from Compensation on behalf of the Participant shall continue and any amounts credited to the Participant's individual account may be used to purchase shares of Common Stock as provided under this Plan. If a Participant goes on a

leave of absence during which the Participant does not receive Compensation, payroll deductions taken on behalf of the Participant shall be discontinued and no other contributions shall be permitted (unless required by applicable law or otherwise determined by the Committee, in a uniform and nondiscriminatory basis in accordance with Section 423 of the Code to the extent the option is intended to qualify under Section 423 of the Code), but any amounts then credited to the Participant's individual account may be used to purchase shares of Common Stock on the next applicable Exercise Date. Where the period of leave exceeds three months and the Participant's right to employment is not guaranteed either by statute or by contract, employment will be considered to have terminated three months and one day following the commencement of such leave."

Article III GENERAL

Except as expressly set forth herein, this Second Amendment shall not by implication or otherwise alter, modify, amend or in any way affect any of the terms, conditions, obligations, covenants or agreements contained in the Plan, all of which are ratified and affirmed in all respects and shall continue in full force and effect.

SUBSIDIARIES OF THE REGISTRANT

The following is a list of subsidiaries of the company as of February 28, 2018, omitting subsidiaries which, considered in the aggregate, would not constitute a significant subsidiary.

| Name | Incorporation | Doing Business as |
|---|---------------------------|--|
| Helen of Troy Limited | Barbados | Same Name |
| Helen of Troy Comercial Offshore de Macau Limitada | Macau | Same Name |
| Helen of Troy L.P. | Texas Limited Partnership | Same Name, Helen of Troy and Belson Products |
| Idelle Labs, Ltd. | Texas Limited Partnership | Same Name |
| OXO International Ltd. | Texas Limited Partnership | Same Name |
| HOT (UK) Limited | United Kingdom | Same Name, HOT UK and OXO Goodgrips |
| Steel Technologies, LLC | Oregon | Same Name and Hydro Flask |
| Kaz, Inc. | New York | Same Name |
| Kaz USA, Inc. | Massachusetts | Same Name |
| Pur Water Purification Products, Inc. | Nevada | Same Name |
| Kaz Europe Sàrl | Switzerland | Same Name |
| Helen of Troy Texas Corporation | Texas | Same Name |

CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

The Board of Directors Helen of Troy Limited

We have issued our reports dated April 30, 2018, with respect to the consolidated financial statements, schedule, and internal control over financial reporting included in the Annual Report of Helen of Troy Limited on Form 10-K for the year ended February 28, 2018. We consent to the incorporation by reference of said reports in the Registration Statements of Helen of Troy Limited on Forms S-8 (File No. 333-154525; File No. 333-154526; File No. 333-153658; File No. 333-67349; File No. 333-90776; File No. 333-128832; and File No. 333-178217).

/s/ GRANT THORNTON LLP

Dallas, Texas April 30, 2018

CERTIFICATION

I, Julien R. Mininberg, certify that:

- 1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Helen of Troy Limited;
- 2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
- 3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects, the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
- 4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and
 - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - c) Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of the period covered by this report based on such evaluation;
 - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
- The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: April 30, 2018

/s/ Julien R. Mininberg Julien R. Mininbera Chief Executive Officer,

Director and Principal Executive Officer

CERTIFICATION

I, Brian L. Grass, certify that:

- 1. I have reviewed this annual report on Form 10-K of Helen of Troy Limited;
- 2. Based on my knowledge, this report does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary to make the statements made, in light of the circumstances under which such statements were made, not misleading with respect to the period covered by this report;
- 3. Based on my knowledge, the financial statements, and other financial information included in this report, fairly present in all material respects, the financial condition, results of operations and cash flows of the registrant as of, and for, the periods presented in this report;
- 4. The registrant's other certifying officer and I are responsible for establishing and maintaining disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) and internal control over financial reporting (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(f) and 15d-15(f)) for the registrant and have:
 - a) Designed such disclosure controls and procedures, or caused such disclosure controls and procedures to be designed under our supervision, to ensure that material information relating to the registrant, including its consolidated subsidiaries, is made known to us by others within those entities, particularly during the period in which this report is being prepared;
 - b) Designed such internal control over financial reporting, or caused such internal control over financial reporting to be designed under our supervision, to provide reasonable assurance regarding the reliability of financial reporting and the preparation of financial statements for external purposes in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles;
 - Evaluated the effectiveness of the registrant's disclosure controls and procedures and presented in this
 report our conclusions about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures, as of the end of
 the period covered by this report based on such evaluation;
 - d) Disclosed in this report any change in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting that occurred during the registrant's most recent fiscal quarter (the registrant's fourth fiscal quarter in the case of an annual report) that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the registrant's internal control over financial reporting; and
- 5. The registrant's other certifying officer and I have disclosed, based on our most recent evaluation of internal control over financial reporting, to the registrant's auditors and the audit committee of the registrant's board of directors (or persons performing the equivalent functions):
 - a) All significant deficiencies and material weaknesses in the design or operation of internal control over financial reporting which are reasonably likely to adversely affect the registrant's ability to record, process, summarize and report financial information; and
 - b) Any fraud, whether or not material, that involves management or other employees who have a significant role in the registrant's internal control over financial reporting.

Date: April 30, 2018

/s/ Brian L. Grass Brian L. Grass Chief Financial Officer, Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer

CERTIFICATION

In connection with the Annual Report of Helen of Troy Limited (the "Company") on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended February 28, 2018, as filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the "Report"), and pursuant to 18 U.S.C., chapter 63, Section 1350, as adopted pursuant to Section 906 of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002, each of the undersigned, the Chief Executive Officer and Director and the Senior Vice President and Chief Financial Officer of the Company, hereby certifies that to the best of their knowledge:

- 1. The Report fully complies with the requirements of Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934; and
- 2. The information contained in the Report fairly presents, in all material respects, the financial condition and results of operations of the Company.

Dated: April 30, 2018

<u>/s/ Julien R. Mininberg</u>
Julien R. Mininberg
Chief Executive Officer,
Director and Principal Executive Officer

/s/ Brian L. Grass Brian L. Grass Chief Financial Officer, Principal Financial Officer and Principal Accounting Officer

This certification is not deemed to be "filed" for purposes of section 18 of the Securities Exchange Act, or otherwise subject to the liability of that section. This certification is not deemed to be incorporated by reference into any filing under the Securities Act of 1933 or Securities Exchange Act of 1934, except to the extent that the Company specifically incorporates it by reference.